Wissenschaftliches Arbeiten und Präsentation (WS 2019/20)

Martin Held   Andreas Uhl

FB Computerwissenschaften
Universität Salzburg
A-5020 Salzburg, Austria
held@cs.sbg.ac.at, uhl@cs.sbg.ac.at

3. Oktober 2019

UNIV. SALZBURG
COMPUTERWISSENSCHAFTEN

Personalia: M. Held

Instructor: M. Held.

Email: held@cs.sbg.ac.at.

Base-URL: https://www.cosy.sbg.ac.at/~held.

Office: Universität Salzburg, Computerwissenschaften, Rm. 1.20, Jakob-Haringer Str. 2, 5020 Salzburg-Itzling.

Phone number (office): (0662) 8044-6304.

Phone number (secr.): (0662) 8044-6328.

UNIV. SALZBURG
COMPUTERWISSENSCHAFTEN

Personalia: A. Uhl

Email-Adresse: uhl@cs.sbg.ac.at.

WWW-Homepage: http://wavelab.at/member-uhl.shtml

Büro: Computerwissenschaften, Zi. 1.15, Jakob-Haringer Str. 2, Salzburg-Itzling.

Telefonnummer (Büro): (0662) 8044-6303.

Telefonnummer (Sekr.): (0662) 8044-6328.

URL of course: `.../teaching/wiss_arbeiten/wiss_arbeiten.html`.

Lecture time: Friday 8^{00}–10^{45} (with a break of about 15–20 minutes).

Venue: PLUS, Computerwissenschaften, T01, Jakob-Haringer Str. 2.

Formalia: M. Held

URL of course: `.../teaching/wiss_arbeiten/wiss_arbeiten.html`.

Lecture time: Friday 8^{00}–10^{45} (with a break of about 15–20 minutes).

Venue: PLUS, Computerwissenschaften, T01, Jakob-Haringer Str. 2.

Note — graded according to continuous-assessment mode!

— regular attendance is compulsory!

UNIV. SALZBURG
COMPUTERWISSENSCHAFTEN

LVA-URL: http://www.cosy.sbg.ac.at/~uhl/student.html.

Abhaltezeit der LVA: Freitag 8^{00}–11^{00}.

Abhalteort der LVA: T03, Computerwissenschaften, Jakob-Haringer Str. 2.

Goals

Welcome to an introduction to scientific working techniques and to some of the software packages that your CS faculty use for their own scientific work!

Goals

Welcome to an introduction to scientific working techniques and to some of the software packages that your CS faculty use for their own scientific work! We will explain how "science" works, what scientific literature is and how it can be found,

Goals

Welcome to an introduction to scientific working techniques and to some of the software packages that your CS faculty use for their own scientific work! We will explain how “science” works, what scientific literature is and how it can be found, we will talk about the theory and practice of giving scientific presentations,

Goals

Welcome to an introduction to scientific working techniques and to some of the software packages that your CS faculty use for their own scientific work! We will explain how "science" works, what scientific literature is and how it can be found, we will talk about the theory and practice of giving scientific presentations, and we will discuss software packages for

- preparing advanced scientific documents and slides for presentations,
- drafting figures, plots, and similar illustrations,
- manipulating mathematical formulae.

Goals

Welcome to an introduction to scientific working techniques and to some of the software packages that your CS faculty use for their own scientific work! We will explain how "science" works, what scientific literature is and how it can be found, we will talk about the theory and practice of giving scientific presentations, and we will discuss software packages for

- preparing advanced scientific documents and slides for presentations,
- drafting figures, plots, and similar illustrations,
- manipulating mathematical formulae.

The overall goal of this lecture is to familiarize you with scientific working and software packages for scientific working to such an extent that

- you'll be able to use those packages for accomplishing simple tasks without consulting manuals repeatedly,

UNIV. SALZBURG
COMPUTERWISSENSCHAFTEN

Goals

Welcome to an introduction to scientific working techniques and to some of the software packages that your CS faculty use for their own scientific work! We will explain how "science" works, what scientific literature is and how it can be found, we will talk about the theory and practice of giving scientific presentations, and we will discuss software packages for

- preparing advanced scientific documents and slides for presentations,
- drafting figures, plots, and similar illustrations,
- manipulating mathematical formulae.

The overall goal of this lecture is to familiarize you with scientific working and software packages for scientific working to such an extent that

- you'll be able to use those packages for accomplishing simple tasks without consulting manuals repeatedly,
- you'll gain an understanding of the pros and cons of those packages, and know which package to use in order to accomplish a specific task,

UNIV. SALZBURG
COMPUTERWISSENSCHAFTEN

Goals

Welcome to an introduction to scientific working techniques and to some of the software packages that your CS faculty use for their own scientific work! We will explain how "science" works, what scientific literature is and how it can be found, we will talk about the theory and practice of giving scientific presentations, and we will discuss software packages for

- preparing advanced scientific documents and slides for presentations,
- drafting figures, plots, and similar illustrations,
- manipulating mathematical formulae.

The overall goal of this lecture is to familiarize you with scientific working and software packages for scientific working to such an extent that

- you'll be able to use those packages for accomplishing simple tasks without consulting manuals repeatedly,
- you'll gain an understanding of the pros and cons of those packages, and know which package to use in order to accomplish a specific task,

and that

- you'll learn where to find additional information and help if needed.

It is our sincere hope that this will help you with getting done the work more effectively which is needed for your studies.

Topics Discussed

In this lecture we will discuss the following topics and corresponding software packages:

Scientific Literature: types and characteristics, documentation, literature search, bibliographic metrics, ethical issues.

Topics Discussed

In this lecture we will discuss the following topics and corresponding software packages:

Scientific Literature: types and characteristics, documentation, literature search, bibliographic metrics, ethical issues.

Scientific Presentations: guidelines for oral presentations and written documents.

UNIV. SALZBURG
COMPUTERWISSENSCHAFTEN

Topics Discussed

In this lecture we will discuss the following topics and corresponding software packages:

Scientific Literature: types and characteristics, documentation, literature search, bibliographic metrics, ethical issues.

Scientific Presentations: guidelines for oral presentations and written documents.

Scientific Text Processing: LaTeX, PostScript.

UNIV. SALZBURG
COMPUTERWISSENSCHAFTEN

Topics Discussed

In this lecture we will discuss the following topics and corresponding software packages:

Scientific Literature: types and characteristics, documentation, literature search, bibliographic metrics, ethical issues.

Scientific Presentations: guidelines for oral presentations and written documents.

Scientific Text Processing: LaTeX, PostScript.

Drafting and Generating Plots: Ipe, tgif, gnuplot, xgraph.

Topics Discussed

In this lecture we will discuss the following topics and corresponding software packages:

Scientific Literature: types and characteristics, documentation, literature search, bibliographic metrics, ethical issues.

Scientific Presentations: guidelines for oral presentations and written documents.

Scientific Text Processing: LaTeX, PostScript.

Drafting and Generating Plots: Ipe, tgif, gnuplot, xgraph.

Generating Slides: PDF, pdfLaTeX, LaTeX beamer class.

Topics Discussed

In this lecture we will discuss the following topics and corresponding software packages:

Scientific Literature: types and characteristics, documentation, literature search, bibliographic metrics, ethical issues.

Scientific Presentations: guidelines for oral presentations and written documents.

Scientific Text Processing: LaTeX, PostScript.

Drafting and Generating Plots: Ipe, tgif, gnuplot, xgraph.

Generating Slides: PDF, pdfLaTeX, LaTeX beamer class.

Symbolical Mathematics: Mathematica.

UNIV. SALZBURG
COMPUTERWISSENSCHAFTEN

Topics Discussed

In this lecture we will discuss the following topics and corresponding software packages:

Scientific Literature: types and characteristics, documentation, literature search, bibliographic metrics, ethical issues.

Scientific Presentations: guidelines for oral presentations and written documents.

Scientific Text Processing: LaTeX, PostScript.

Drafting and Generating Plots: Ipe, tgif, gnuplot, xgraph.

Generating Slides: PDF, pdfLaTeX, LaTeX beamer class.

Symbolical Mathematics: Mathematica.

Obviously, time constraints do not allow us to discuss tons of software packages in detail. We have selected those packages according to whether we've personally found them useful for our own scientific work. All packages discussed are freely available (for students) and can be installed on any PC running Linux. (Some of them may also be available for MS-based platforms.)

Electronic Slides and Online Material

In addition to these slides, you are encouraged to consult the WWW home-page of this lecture:

http://www.cosy.sbg.ac.at/˜held/teaching/wiss_arbeiten/wiss_arbeiten.html.

In particular, this WWW page will contain links to online manuals.

UNIV. SALZBURG
COMPUTERWISSENSCHAFTEN

A Few Words of Warning

- I hope that these slides will help you to get acquainted with the software packages discussed. However, I would like to warn you explicitly not to regard these slides as the sole source of information on the topics of my lecture. It may and will happen that I'll use the lecture for talking about subtle details of some package that are not covered in these slides! In particular, by making these slides available to you I do not intend to encourage you to attend the lecture on an irregular basis.
- See also In Praise of Lectures by T.W. Körner.

A Few Words of Warning

- I hope that these slides will help you to get acquainted with the software packages discussed. However, I would like to warn you explicitly not to regard these slides as the sole source of information on the topics of my lecture. It may and will happen that I'll use the lecture for talking about subtle details of some package that are not covered in these slides! In particular, by making these slides available to you I do not intend to encourage you to attend the lecture on an irregular basis.
- See also In Praise of Lectures by T.W. Körner.
- Also, I hope that you will realize that most software packages dealt with in this lecture will only be fully appreciated after using them for yourself. It will be considerably more difficult to learn, say, LaTeX if you are not prepared and willing to get your hands on a computer and try it out personally.

Acknowledgments

I am happy to acknowledge that I benefited from material published by colleagues on diverse topics presented in this lecture. In particular, several sample codes (for LaTeX figures, PostScript, etc.) are borrowed from other publications. Similarly, some descriptions of software packages were copied from their respective user manuals. While some of the material used for this lecture was originally presented in traditional-style publications (such as textbooks), some other material has its roots in non-standard publication outlets (such as online documentations).

Andreas Uhl contributed slides for the first part of this course.

Information and data on publication statistics was provided by Katherine Eve (Publisher, Geochemistry and Geophysics, Elsevier Ltd.).

Salzburg, July 2019 Martin Held

UNIV. SALZBURG
COMPUTERWISSENSCHAFTEN

Legal Fine Print and Disclaimer

To the best of our knowledge, these slides do not violate or infringe upon somebody else's copyrights. If copyrighted material appears in these slides then it was considered to be available in a non-profit manner and as an educational tool for teaching at an academic institution, within the limits of the "fair use" policy. For copyrighted material we strive to give references to the copyright holders (if known). Of course, any trademarks mentioned in these slides are properties of their respective owners.

These slides are made available without warrant of any kind, either express or implied, including but not limited to the implied warranties of merchantability and fitness for a particular purpose. In no event shall the copyright holder(s) and/or their respective employers be liable for any special, indirect or consequential damages or any damages whatsoever resulting from loss of use, data or profits, arising out of or in connection with the use of information provided in these slides.

Table of Content

1. **Scientific Literature and Scientific Presentations**
    - Scientific Literature
    - Literature Search
    - Bibliographic Metrics
    - Discussion of the Current Scientific Publishing Scheme
    - Guidelines for Good Oral Presentations
    - Guidelines for Good Written Presentations
    - Ethical Issues

UNIV. SALZBURG
COMPUTERWISSENSCHAFTEN

What is Scientific Literature?

- For many problems a lot of different solutions are already known and stored in the “literature”. When working on the solution of a problem in computer science one should, of course, consult the literature in order to avoid spending time on developing solution approaches that are already known.

What is Scientific Literature?

- For many problems a lot of different solutions are already known and stored in the “literature”. When working on the solution of a problem in computer science one should, of course, consult the literature in order to avoid spending time on developing solution approaches that are already known.
- Checking the literature and thinking about a solution are *alternating steps* that depend on each other and should be iterated:
  - Own attempts to solve a problem will clarify where a solution might be found in the literature.
  - Looking into the literature will provide new ideas on how to solve the problem.

UNIV. SALZBURG
COMPUTERWISSENSCHAFTEN

What is Scientific Literature?

- For many problems a lot of different solutions are already known and stored in the "literature". When working on the solution of a problem in computer science one should, of course, consult the literature in order to avoid spending time on developing solution approaches that are already known.
- Checking the literature and thinking about a solution are *alternating steps* that depend on each other and should be iterated:
  - Own attempts to solve a problem will clarify where a solution might be found in the literature.
  - Looking into the literature will provide new ideas on how to solve the problem.
- For an efficient use of scientific literature it is necessary to know the *characteristics* of scientific literature and *how literature is organized*.

UNIV. SALZBURG
COMPUTERWISSENSCHAFTEN

What is Scientific Literature?

- For years, the term “scientific literature” had been used exclusively for written documents.

What is Scientific Literature?

- For years, the term “scientific literature” had been used exclusively for written documents.
- More recently, in the field of computer science the term “scientific literature” has come to comprise also “active” knowledge and methods in the form of
  - software systems and applets,
  - algorithm libraries,
  - knowledge bases,
  - WWW pages.

UNIV. SALZBURG
COMPUTERWISSENSCHAFTEN

What is Scientific Literature?

- For years, the term “scientific literature” had been used exclusively for written documents.
- More recently, in the field of computer science the term “scientific literature” has come to comprise also “active” knowledge and methods in the form of
  - software systems and applets,
  - algorithm libraries,
  - knowledge bases,
  - WWW pages.
- Still, in the following, we will concentrate on classical written documents when using the term “scientific literature”.

Types of Scientific Literature

- monographs (books),
- articles in journals,
- articles in collections,
- written versions of conference talks (proceedings papers),
- technical reports of research organizations,
- theses,
- patent descriptions.

Types of Scientific Literature

- monographs (books),
- articles in journals,
- articles in collections,
- written versions of conference talks (proceedings papers),
- technical reports of research organizations,
- theses,
- patent descriptions.

These basic types of scientific literature have different characteristics with respect to

- authorship,
- contents,
- originality,
- production, organization,
- quality control.

Monographs

Authorship: A book has one or several authors who write the book. Upon writing a publisher has to be found for processing the book. In practice, usually a publisher is sought before the book is written. Often, scholars of high reputation are approached by publishers or editors of book series to write a book on a specific subject.

Monographs

Authorship: A book has one or several authors who write the book. Upon writing a publisher has to be found for processing the book. In practice, usually a publisher is sought before the book is written. Often, scholars of high reputation are approached by publishers or editors of book series to write a book on a specific subject.

Content: A monograph treats a specific area of computer science in a systematic and complete form. The area may be a traditional area seen under a new or specific perspective or a new area whose results are scattered in various other sources like journal articles and conference papers.

UNIV. SALZBURG
COMPUTERWISSENSCHAFTEN

Authorship: A book has one or several authors who write the book. Upon writing a publisher has to be found for processing the book. In practice, usually a publisher is sought before the book is written. Often, scholars of high reputation are approached by publishers or editors of book series to write a book on a specific subject.

Content: A monograph treats a specific area of computer science in a systematic and complete form. The area may be a traditional area seen under a new or specific perspective or a new area whose results are scattered in various other sources like journal articles and conference papers. The content is also determined by the level of background the author presupposes on the side of the readers: e.g., undergraduate texts, graduate texts, research monographs.

Monographs

Authorship: A book has one or several authors who write the book. Upon writing a publisher has to be found for processing the book. In practice, usually a publisher is sought before the book is written. Often, scholars of high reputation are approached by publishers or editors of book series to write a book on a specific subject.

Content: A monograph treats a specific area of computer science in a systematic and complete form. The area may be a traditional area seen under a new or specific perspective or a new area whose results are scattered in various other sources like journal articles and conference papers. The content is also determined by the level of background the author presupposes on the side of the readers: e.g., undergraduate texts, graduate texts, research monographs.

Originality: Mostly, the results contained in a monograph are *not* new but were already published earlier in other sources. However, explaining everything in one uniform context or filling gaps in a systematic treatment etc. may be quite a creative process but it is not considered to be original research in computer science.

UNIV. SALZBURG
COMPUTERWISSENSCHAFTEN

Production and Organization: The authors write the book and transfer the the "copyright" to the publishing company which publishes. A certain number of copies of the book — an "edition" — is produced in one process and put on stock. The number of copies of one edition may range from a few hundreds to several thousand copies. Before a new edition is printed, authors are invited to update, improve and possibly extend the book.

Production and Organization: The authors write the book and transfer the the "copyright" to the publishing company which publishes. A certain number of copies of the book — an "edition" — is produced in one process and put on stock. The number of copies of one edition may range from a few hundreds to several thousand copies. Before a new edition is printed, authors are invited to update, improve and possibly extend the book.

The company pays 5–10% of the retail price as "royalty" to the authors for each copy sold. Usually the authors also receive complimentary copies or the right to obtain copies at a reduced price.

Monographs

Production and Organization: The authors write the book and transfer the the "copyright" to the publishing company which publishes. A certain number of copies of the book — an "edition" — is produced in one process and put on stock. The number of copies of one edition may range from a few hundreds to several thousand copies. Before a new edition is printed, authors are invited to update, improve and possibly extend the book.

The company pays 5–10% of the retail price as "royalty" to the authors for each copy sold. Usually the authors also receive complimentary copies or the right to obtain copies at a reduced price.

Quality control: At good publishing companies, the scientific quality of monographs is checked by an "editor" who normally is a renowned expert in the field of the book. Often, one or several editors are in charge of a book series in a specific area. Typically, additional scholars – so-called "referees" – are asked to assess the quality of some or all of the book's chapters.

Monographs

Production and Organization: The authors write the book and transfer the the "copyright" to the publishing company which publishes. A certain number of copies of the book — an "edition" — is produced in one process and put on stock. The number of copies of one edition may range from a few hundreds to several thousand copies. Before a new edition is printed, authors are invited to update, improve and possibly extend the book.
The company pays 5–10% of the retail price as "royalty" to the authors for each copy sold. Usually the authors also receive complimentary copies or the right to obtain copies at a reduced price.

Quality control: At good publishing companies, the scientific quality of monographs is checked by an "editor" who normally is a renowned expert in the field of the book. Often, one or several editors are in charge of a book series in a specific area. Typically, additional scholars – so-called "referees" – are asked to assess the quality of some or all of the book's chapters. Furthermore, publishers employ a "copy editor" or "desk editor", who is in charge of correcting grammar and style. After the publication of the book on the market critical reviews about the book may be published in "review journals": short summary, assessment of value and criticism of the book.

Journal Articles

Authorship: Every scholar may be an author of an article in a journal. In fact, every scholar should strive for publishing his/her results in journals since this the type of scientific publication with the highest quality standard.

Journal Articles

Authorship: Every scholar may be an author of an article in a journal. In fact, every scholar should strive for publishing his/her results in journals since this the type of scientific publication with the highest quality standard. Acceptance of articles in journals is essentially guaranteed if the paper is in the scope of the journal and the quality of the paper meets the scientific standard of the journal. In contrast to books, acceptance of articles in journals is not at all driven by economic considerations. In case of more than one author the authors may be ordered alphabetically or ordered in accordance to the importance of their contribution to the paper.

Journal Articles

Authorship: Every scholar may be an author of an article in a journal. In fact, every scholar should strive for publishing his/her results in journals since this the type of scientific publication with the highest quality standard. Acceptance of articles in journals is essentially guaranteed if the paper is in the scope of the journal and the quality of the paper meets the scientific standard of the journal. In contrast to books, acceptance of articles in journals is not at all driven by economic considerations. In case of more than one author the authors may be ordered alphabetically or ordered in accordance to the importance of their contribution to the paper.

Contents and Originality: Journal articles contain *new* results within the scope of the journal. (Exceptionally, journals also publish survey articles on emerging and topical fields. Usually, such articles are "by invitation", i.e., top scholars in the respective field are asked to submit a survey). Journal articles are directed towards the relatively small group of expert readers that work in the field covered by the journal. There are approximately 1 000 "refereed" journals in the area of mathematics and computer science.

Journal Articles

Production and Organization: Like books, journals are published by publishing companies. The author prepares a manuscript and sends ("submits") it to the editor (or to one of the editors) of the journal. Sometimes the "editorial board" of a journal may be quite big – ten to fifteen people – in order to represent the scope of the journal well. (The impulse to start a new journal is a joint effort of a group of scholars who want to open a publication forum for their field of expertise and of a publishing company which sees a niche in the market.)

Journal Articles

Production and Organization: Like books, journals are published by publishing companies. The author prepares a manuscript and sends ("submits") it to the editor (or to one of the editors) of the journal. Sometimes the "editorial board" of a journal may be quite big – ten to fifteen people – in order to represent the scope of the journal well. (The impulse to start a new journal is a joint effort of a group of scholars who want to open a publication forum for their field of expertise and of a publishing company which sees a niche in the market.)

If the editor accepts a manuscript after the refereeing process then it is sent to the publishing company for printing. Also, the editor may suggest an "issue" into which the paper should go. The issues of a journal appear on a regular basis, for example quarterly, bimonthly or monthly. Typically, an issue has 50–150 pages and contains several articles ("papers"). Several issues are combined in a volume; usually, a volume comprises the issues that appear in one calendar year.

Production and Organization: Like books, journals are published by publishing companies. The author prepares a manuscript and sends ("submits") it to the editor (or to one of the editors) of the journal. Sometimes the "editorial board" of a journal may be quite big – ten to fifteen people – in order to represent the scope of the journal well. (The impulse to start a new journal is a joint effort of a group of scholars who want to open a publication forum for their field of expertise and of a publishing company which sees a niche in the market.)

If the editor accepts a manuscript after the refereeing process then it is sent to the publishing company for printing. Also, the editor may suggest an "issue" into which the paper should go. The issues of a journal appear on a regular basis, for example quarterly, bimonthly or monthly. Typically, an issue has 50–150 pages and contains several articles ("papers"). Several issues are combined in a volume; usually, a volume comprises the issues that appear in one calendar year.

The publisher owns the copyright for the articles and no royalties are paid to the authors. (Sometimes authors are even asked to share the printing costs.) Journals are sold to "subscribers" (such as scientific libraries). Often, publishers grant reduced rates for individual subscriptions.

Quality control: The scientific quality of journal papers is checked by the following "refereeing procedure", which is fairly standardized for international journals in mathematics and computer science.

1. An author submits a manuscript to an editor of the journal.

Journal Articles

Quality control: The scientific quality of journal papers is checked by the following "refereeing procedure", which is fairly standardized for international journals in mathematics and computer science.

1. An author submits a manuscript to an editor of the journal.
2. The editor asks two or more anonymous "referees" – i.e., blind refereeing – to give a detailed assessment of the quality of the paper. The referees may be members of the editorial board but normally many more scholars outside of the editorial board are involved. There are several criteria that must be met by a paper that is "accepted" for publication (see below).

Journal Articles

Quality control: The scientific quality of journal papers is checked by the following "refereeing procedure", which is fairly standardized for international journals in mathematics and computer science.

1. An author submits a manuscript to an editor of the journal.
2. The editor asks two or more anonymous "referees" – i.e., blind refereeing – to give a detailed assessment of the quality of the paper. The referees may be members of the editorial board but normally many more scholars outside of the editorial board are involved. There are several criteria that must be met by a paper that is "accepted" for publication (see below).
   "Double-blind refereeing" is a special kind of refereeing where also the identity of the authors is concealed – the goal is to provide a higher level of objectivity.

UNIV. SALZBURG
COMPUTERWISSENSCHAFTEN

Quality control: The scientific quality of journal papers is checked by the following "refereeing procedure", which is fairly standardized for international journals in mathematics and computer science.

1. An author submits a manuscript to an editor of the journal.
2. The editor asks two or more anonymous "referees" – i.e., blind refereeing – to give a detailed assessment of the quality of the paper. The referees may be members of the editorial board but normally many more scholars outside of the editorial board are involved. There are several criteria that must be met by a paper that is "accepted" for publication (see below).
   "Double-blind refereeing" is a special kind of refereeing where also the identity of the authors is concealed – the goal is to provide a higher level of objectivity.
3. A paper might have to undergo several "revisions" before it is accepted for publication. The editor in charge of the paper supervises this process which usually involves communication between the anonymous referees and the author, with the editor acting as an intermediary.

Quality control: The scientific quality of journal papers is checked by the following "refereeing procedure", which is fairly standardized for international journals in mathematics and computer science.

1. An author submits a manuscript to an editor of the journal.
2. The editor asks two or more anonymous "referees" – i.e., blind refereeing – to give a detailed assessment of the quality of the paper. The referees may be members of the editorial board but normally many more scholars outside of the editorial board are involved. There are several criteria that must be met by a paper that is "accepted" for publication (see below).
   "Double-blind refereeing" is a special kind of refereeing where also the identity of the authors is concealed – the goal is to provide a higher level of objectivity.
3. A paper might have to undergo several "revisions" before it is accepted for publication. The editor in charge of the paper supervises this process which usually involves communication between the anonymous referees and the author, with the editor acting as an intermediary.
4. If the paper is finally accepted it is sent to the publisher. Otherwise, it is rejected.

Journal Articles

The following items should be assessed by a referee report:

- Whether the paper is in the scope of the journal,
- Interest to the readers of the journal,
- Originality,
- Level of detail,
- Technical correctness and content,
- Language and clarity of presentation,
- Structural organization.

Journal Articles

The following items should be assessed by a referee report:

- Whether the paper is in the scope of the journal,
- Interest to the readers of the journal,
- Originality,
- Level of detail,
- Technical correctness and content,
- Language and clarity of presentation,
- Structural organization.

Also, it is common that the referee has to judge his own level of competence in refereeing the paper (e.g. specialist, familiar with the field, ...).

Sample Referee's Form ("Computer-Aided Design")

```
Referee's comments on a manuscript for CAD journal.

Please mark the boxes which best describe your view of the paper.
----------------------------------------------------------------------

1. ORIGINALITY
[ ] Never been done before.
[ ] Never been done this way before.
[ ] Minor variation on a known technique.  (Can you cite a reference?)
[ ] Re-invention of a known technique.  (Can you cite a reference?)
----------------------------------------------------------------------
2. SIGNIFICANCE
[ ] Important problem [ ] of current interest.
[ ] Part of a problem [ ] of current interest.
[ ] An interesting insight.
[ ] Recreational.
----------------------------------------------------------------------
3. SOUNDNESS
[ ] Obviously sound.
[ ] Probably sound.
[ ] Contains errors of detail.  (What sort of errors?)
[ ] Seriously flawed.  (Where are the flaws?)
----------------------------------------------------------------------
```

Sample Referee's Form

```
4. DETAIL
[ ] Unnecessarily detailed.  (Which parts could be shortened?)
[ ] Enough for a graduate student to use the results.
[ ] Enough for the referee to use the results.
[ ] No-one could use the results.  (What's missing?)
-----------------------------------------------------------------------
5. REFERENCES
[ ] Too many background references of marginal value.
[ ] Virtually the same references the referee would have cited.
[ ] Out-of-date references: to old work only.
[ ] Shallow references: to new work only.
[ ] Totally inadequate references.  (What should be cited?)
-----------------------------------------------------------------------
6. COMPREHENSIBILITY
[ ] Understood at first reading.
[ ] Several readings required.
[ ] It would take a week to understand this paper.
-----------------------------------------------------------------------
```

Sample Referee's Form

```
7. PRESENTATION
[ ] Paper is too long.  (What could be omitted?)

[ ] Paper is well-balanced.
[ ] Paper is too short.  (What's missing?)
[ ] Rearrangement needed.  (How should the paper be arranged?)

[ ] Title not descriptive.  (Can you suggest a better title?)
[ ] Abstract not descriptive.  (What's wrong with it?)
[ ] Poor figures.  (What's wrong with them?)
-----------------------------------------------------------------------
8. RECOMMENDATION
[ ] Accept as is.
[ ] Accept after minor revision.
[ ] Major revision and further refereeing.  (What changes are
    essential?)
     [ ] I am prepared to look at a revised version.

[ ] Reject.  (What is the main reason for this recommendation?)
-----------------------------------------------------------------------

Please add any comments intended for the authors, which would explain
the problems with the manuscript and/or help them to improve it.
```

- Of course, the refereeing procedure takes time. Also, the printing process may be time consuming since many journals have “backlogs”, i.e., there is a queue of accepted papers awaiting appearance in one of the next issues of the journals. Consequently, the time period between submission and appearance of journal articles – and, in some cases, even just the decision on acceptance or rejection – may well be two years or longer. This is an obvious disadvantage especially in a rapidly evolving field like computer science.

- Of course, the refereeing procedure takes time. Also, the printing process may be time consuming since many journals have “backlogs”, i.e., there is a queue of accepted papers awaiting appearance in one of the next issues of the journals. Consequently, the time period between submission and appearance of journal articles – and, in some cases, even just the decision on acceptance or rejection – may well be two years or longer. This is an obvious disadvantage especially in a rapidly evolving field like computer science.
- Still, never ever submit two (virtually) identical manuscripts to two journals in parallel. (Even competing journals tend to exchange information, and all editorial handling of your manuscripts will come to a grinding halt if multiple parallel submissions are detected.)

Articles in Collections

This is very similar to special issues of journals devoted to a specific topic.

Authorship, Contents, Originality, Quality control: Similar to articles in journals.

Articles in Collections

This is very similar to special issues of journals devoted to a specific topic.

Authorship, Contents, Originality, Quality control: Similar to articles in journals.

Production and Organization: A collection of articles is a single, independent publication. A group of scholars in cooperation with a publishing company might want to publish independent articles in a topical field. Typically, an editor is asked to organize the volume, i.e., to "solicit" papers from authors and write a "call for papers (CFP)" so that everybody who thinks (s)he might make a valuable contribution to the volume can submit a paper. Furthermore, the editor organizes the refereeing process, guides authors in the revisions, and finally makes a decision about which papers to accept and which to reject.

Conference Papers

Authorship and Originality: Similar to journal articles or articles in collections.

UNIV. SALZBURG
COMPUTERWISSENSCHAFTEN

Conference Papers

Authorship and Originality: Similar to journal articles or articles in collections.

Production and Organization: Conference papers differ from journal articles in various respects that have to do with the specific way conferences are organized — a conference is organized for the purpose of quick exchange of new results in a particular area of computer science!

UNIV. SALZBURG
COMPUTERWISSENSCHAFTEN

Authorship and Originality: Similar to journal articles or articles in collections.

Production and Organization: Conference papers differ from journal articles in various respects that have to do with the specific way conferences are organized — a conference is organized for the purpose of quick exchange of new results in a particular area of computer science!

- Typically, a scientific organization – e.g., a scientific society such as IEEE or ACM, or a research institution – decides to organize a conference and determines scope, date, and place of the conference. They install a conference chair, a program committee (PC) and an organization committee.

UNIV. SALZBURG
COMPUTERWISSENSCHAFTEN

Conference Papers

Authorship and Originality: Similar to journal articles or articles in collections.

Production and Organization: Conference papers differ from journal articles in various respects that have to do with the specific way conferences are organized — a conference is organized for the purpose of quick exchange of new results in a particular area of computer science!

- Typically, a scientific organization – e.g., a scientific society such as IEEE or ACM, or a research institution – decides to organize a conference and determines scope, date, and place of the conference. They install a conference chair, a program committee (PC) and an organization committee.
- The conference chair presides and coordinates all people involved in the conference. In particular, (s)he is in charge of making the conference known in the scientific community and for getting sufficient (financial) support.

Authorship and Originality: Similar to journal articles or articles in collections.

Production and Organization: Conference papers differ from journal articles in various respects that have to do with the specific way conferences are organized — a conference is organized for the purpose of quick exchange of new results in a particular area of computer science!

- Typically, a scientific organization – e.g., a scientific society such as IEEE or ACM, or a research institution – decides to organize a conference and determines scope, date, and place of the conference. They install a conference chair, a program committee (PC) and an organization committee.
- The conference chair presides and coordinates all people involved in the conference. In particular, (s)he is in charge of making the conference known in the scientific community and for getting sufficient (financial) support.
- The organizing committee is responsible for the local arrangements. In particular, it organizes all technical matters (lecture halls, equipment, lodging, . . .).

Conference Papers

Authorship and Originality: Similar to journal articles or articles in collections.

Production and Organization: Conference papers differ from journal articles in various respects that have to do with the specific way conferences are organized — a conference is organized for the purpose of quick exchange of new results in a particular area of computer science!

- Typically, a scientific organization – e.g., a scientific society such as IEEE or ACM, or a research institution – decides to organize a conference and determines scope, date, and place of the conference. They install a conference chair, a program committee (PC) and an organization committee.
- The conference chair presides and coordinates all people involved in the conference. In particular, (s)he is in charge of making the conference known in the scientific community and for getting sufficient (financial) support.
- The organizing committee is responsible for the local arrangements. In particular, it organizes all technical matters (lecture halls, equipment, lodging, . . .).
- Most conferences are organized on a regular basis at changing locations and with changing PCs.

Production and Organization:

- The program committee (PC) consists of a couple of leading scholars in the field who are in charge of the scientific quality of the conference. The PC is led by the program chair.

Production and Organization:

- The program committee (PC) consists of a couple of leading scholars in the field who are in charge of the scientific quality of the conference. The PC is led by the program chair.
- The PC writes a CFP (i.e., sends an invitation to all scholars working in the field soliciting papers) and determines a "deadline" for submission. Also the PC will negotiate with a publishing company for eventual publication of the proceedings.

Production and Organization:

- The program committee (PC) consists of a couple of leading scholars in the field who are in charge of the scientific quality of the conference. The PC is led by the program chair.
- The PC writes a CFP (i.e., sends an invitation to all scholars working in the field soliciting papers) and determines a “deadline” for submission. Also the PC will negotiate with a publishing company for eventual publication of the proceedings.
- Often, in addition, well known leading scholars are “invited” to present a talk at the conference on particularly important subjects: “invited speaker”, “plenary talk”.

Production and Organization:

- The program committee (PC) consists of a couple of leading scholars in the field who are in charge of the scientific quality of the conference. The PC is led by the program chair.
- The PC writes a CFP (i.e., sends an invitation to all scholars working in the field soliciting papers) and determines a “deadline” for submission. Also the PC will negotiate with a publishing company for eventual publication of the proceedings.
- Often, in addition, well known leading scholars are “invited” to present a talk at the conference on particularly important subjects: “invited speaker”, “plenary talk”.
- For all papers submitted the PC organizes the refereeing procedure. Of course, refereeing must take place within the deadline defined by the PC.

Production and Organization:

- The program committee (PC) consists of a couple of leading scholars in the field who are in charge of the scientific quality of the conference. The PC is led by the program chair.
- The PC writes a CFP (i.e., sends an invitation to all scholars working in the field soliciting papers) and determines a “deadline” for submission. Also the PC will negotiate with a publishing company for eventual publication of the proceedings.
- Often, in addition, well known leading scholars are “invited” to present a talk at the conference on particularly important subjects: “invited speaker”, “plenary talk”.
- For all papers submitted the PC organizes the refereeing procedure. Of course, refereeing must take place within the deadline defined by the PC.
- After this deadline, in a session of the PC a decision is made about which papers are accepted and which papers are rejected.

Production and Organization:

- The program committee (PC) consists of a couple of leading scholars in the field who are in charge of the scientific quality of the conference. The PC is led by the program chair.
- The PC writes a CFP (i.e., sends an invitation to all scholars working in the field soliciting papers) and determines a “deadline” for submission. Also the PC will negotiate with a publishing company for eventual publication of the proceedings.
- Often, in addition, well known leading scholars are “invited” to present a talk at the conference on particularly important subjects: “invited speaker”, “plenary talk”.
- For all papers submitted the PC organizes the refereeing procedure. Of course, refereeing must take place within the deadline defined by the PC.
- After this deadline, in a session of the PC a decision is made about which papers are accepted and which papers are rejected.
- Nowadays it is common to use a web-based conference management system like EasyChair or OpenConf to handle submissions and reviewing.

Production and Organization:

- Accepted papers should be revised by the authors according to the suggestions of the referees (but this need not be controlled!) and submitted by a specified deadline in their final form for publication.

UNIV. SALZBURG
COMPUTERWISSENSCHAFTEN

Conference Papers

Production and Organization:

- Accepted papers should be revised by the authors according to the suggestions of the referees (but this need not be controlled!) and submitted by a specified deadline in their final form for publication.
- The revised and invited papers are included in the conference proceedings, which normally are available at the time of the conference.

Conference Papers

Production and Organization:

- Accepted papers should be revised by the authors according to the suggestions of the referees (but this need not be controlled!) and submitted by a specified deadline in their final form for publication.
- The revised and invited papers are included in the conference proceedings, which normally are available at the time of the conference.
- The production, marketing and publication of the proceedings is organized by the publishing company. The PC chair usually is also the editor of the proceedings.

Conference Papers

Production and Organization:

- Accepted papers should be revised by the authors according to the suggestions of the referees (but this need not be controlled!) and submitted by a specified deadline in their final form for publication.
- The revised and invited papers are included in the conference proceedings, which normally are available at the time of the conference.
- The production, marketing and publication of the proceedings is organized by the publishing company. The PC chair usually is also the editor of the proceedings.
- When the list of accepted papers has been fixed, an announcement of the conference is distributed to as many people as possible with an invitation to attend the conference.

Production and Organization:

- Accepted papers should be revised by the authors according to the suggestions of the referees (but this need not be controlled!) and submitted by a specified deadline in their final form for publication.
- The revised and invited papers are included in the conference proceedings, which normally are available at the time of the conference.
- The production, marketing and publication of the proceedings is organized by the publishing company. The PC chair usually is also the editor of the proceedings.
- When the list of accepted papers has been fixed, an announcement of the conference is distributed to as many people as possible with an invitation to attend the conference.
- The authors of accepted papers will present their papers at the conference in the form of a "talk" or a "poster" with a possibility for discussions during or after the presentation. Normally, more people take part in the conference than just the people who present a talk.

Production and Organization:

- Accepted papers should be revised by the authors according to the suggestions of the referees (but this need not be controlled!) and submitted by a specified deadline in their final form for publication.
- The revised and invited papers are included in the conference proceedings, which normally are available at the time of the conference.
- The production, marketing and publication of the proceedings is organized by the publishing company. The PC chair usually is also the editor of the proceedings.
- When the list of accepted papers has been fixed, an announcement of the conference is distributed to as many people as possible with an invitation to attend the conference.
- The authors of accepted papers will present their papers at the conference in the form of a “talk” or a “poster” with a possibility for discussions during or after the presentation. Normally, more people take part in the conference than just the people who present a talk.
- Conferences are organized in sessions which have dedicated chairpersons.

Quality control: Obviously, quality control for conference papers cannot be as perfect as for journal papers due to the strict time schedule. Conference papers have the advantage of speedy publication and no backlog. Quality differs very much among the various conferences because the refereeing procedure may be quite different. Similarly, the acceptance rates vary drastically. As a rule of thumb, conferences organized by or under the direct auspicies of a large professional society like IEEE or ACM usually offer an excellent quality. (This comment does not apply to conferences which are just sponsered by IEEE, though.)

Conference Papers

Quality control: Obviously, quality control for conference papers cannot be as perfect as for journal papers due to the strict time schedule. Conference papers have the advantage of speedy publication and no backlog. Quality differs very much among the various conferences because the refereeing procedure may be quite different. Similarly, the acceptance rates vary drastically. As a rule of thumb, conferences organized by or under the direct auspicies of a large professional society like IEEE or ACM usually offer an excellent quality. (This comment does not apply to conferences which are just sponsered by IEEE, though.)

Prestige: Although journal publications have a higher prestige than conference publications, it tends to be harder to get into some of the top CS conferences than into a good journal.

However, the prestige of a conference publication differs even within different fields of CS!

UNIV. SALZBURG
COMPUTERWISSENSCHAFTEN

Poster Presentations

- Poster presentations are given during a poster session at a conference. During a fixed time frame authors are present at their posters and give short presentations and explanations of their work, typically for less than five minutes. Since the atmosphere is more informal as compared to a talk, a more lively interaction between the author and the audience may be expected.

Poster Presentations

- Poster presentations are given during a poster session at a conference. During a fixed time frame authors are present at their posters and give short presentations and explanations of their work, typically for less than five minutes. Since the atmosphere is more informal as compared to a talk, a more lively interaction between the author and the audience may be expected.
  - Pros: More interactive, more spontaneous, real discussions.
  - Cons: Often, poster sessions are abused to accommodate some low-quality contributions submitted to a conference. In this case, poster sessions tend to take place as a side event during coffee breaks.

UNIV. SALZBURG
COMPUTERWISSENSCHAFTEN

Poster Presentations

- Poster presentations are given during a poster session at a conference. During a fixed time frame authors are present at their posters and give short presentations and explanations of their work, typically for less than five minutes. Since the atmosphere is more informal as compared to a talk, a more lively interaction between the author and the audience may be expected.
    - Pros: More interactive, more spontaneous, real discussions.
    - Cons: Often, poster sessions are abused to accommodate some low-quality contributions submitted to a conference. In this case, poster sessions tend to take place as a side event during coffee breaks.
- It is important to show only the main ideas on the poster! If the poster is written using small fonts and very detailed graphics, nobody will take the time to study it thoroughly and the interest of the audience will be directed to the poster of your colleague just beside yourself. There is a tough competition at poster sessions to attract the attention of the potential audience!

Technical Reports

- The time elapsing between the submission of a manuscript and its actual publication may be fairly long. Also, new results often do not yet satisfy all quality criteria for journals or conferences. Therefore, some scientific institutions publish their own “technical report series”.

Technical Reports

- The time elapsing between the submission of a manuscript and its actual publication may be fairly long. Also, new results often do not yet satisfy all quality criteria for journals or conferences. Therefore, some scientific institutions publish their own “technical report series”.

  Authorship: Members or visitors of the scientific institution.

  Contents: New results in the special area of the author or preliminary versions of lecture notes.

  Originality: Often highly original and topical material.

UNIV. SALZBURG
COMPUTERWISSENSCHAFTEN

Technical Reports

- The time elapsing between the submission of a manuscript and its actual publication may be fairly long. Also, new results often do not yet satisfy all quality criteria for journals or conferences. Therefore, some scientific institutions publish their own "technical report series".

  Authorship: Members or visitors of the scientific institution.

  Contents: New results in the special area of the author or preliminary versions of lecture notes.

  Originality: Often highly original and topical material.

  Quality control: None. Often, revised versions of good technical reports are submitted to journals ("preprints").

Technical Reports

- The time elapsing between the submission of a manuscript and its actual publication may be fairly long. Also, new results often do not yet satisfy all quality criteria for journals or conferences. Therefore, some scientific institutions publish their own “technical report series”.

  Authorship: Members or visitors of the scientific institution.

  Contents: New results in the special area of the author or preliminary versions of lecture notes.

  Originality: Often highly original and topical material.

  Quality control: None. Often, revised versions of good technical reports are submitted to journals (“preprints”).

  Production, organization: Normally, technical reports are published in a series but irregularly. No publishing company is involved, reports are published by the scientific institution and often made available on a web-page.

Technical Reports

- The time elapsing between the submission of a manuscript and its actual publication may be fairly long. Also, new results often do not yet satisfy all quality criteria for journals or conferences. Therefore, some scientific institutions publish their own "technical report series".

  Authorship: Members or visitors of the scientific institution.

  Contents: New results in the special area of the author or preliminary versions of lecture notes.

  Originality: Often highly original and topical material.

  Quality control: None. Often, revised versions of good technical reports are submitted to journals ("preprints").

  Production, organization: Normally, technical reports are published in a series but irregularly. No publishing company is involved, reports are published by the scientific institution and often made available on a web-page.

- The importance of technical reports has decreased vastly in recent years. In particular, traditional technical reports (mostly) got replaced by publications in online media, such as the archive service www.arXiv.org owned and operated by Cornell University (Ithaca, NY, USA).

Master's thesis: Demonstrates the author's ability to work with scientific literature and scientific tools in general. It usually gives an overview of a field in computer science and the discussion and solution of/to a specific problem. It is, of course, desirable to have original results in a Master's thesis but this is not mandatory by law. The quality is controlled by the thesis advisor. A Master's thesis is normally not published but may contain parts that have been published by the author elsewhere.

Master's thesis: Demonstrates the author's ability to work with scientific literature and scientific tools in general. It usually gives an overview of a field in computer science and the discussion and solution of/to a specific problem. It is, of course, desirable to have original results in a Master's thesis but this is not mandatory by law. The quality is controlled by the thesis advisor. A Master's thesis is normally not published but may contain parts that have been published by the author elsewhere.

Dissertation/PhD thesis: Demonstrates the author's ability to achieve original scientific results. It is mandatory to have original results in a PhD thesis and parts of it should definitely be published in modified form. The quality is controlled by the thesis advisor and a second referee. Quality control may and will differ among different schools, though.

Academic Theses

Master's thesis: Demonstrates the author's ability to work with scientific literature and scientific tools in general. It usually gives an overview of a field in computer science and the discussion and solution of/to a specific problem. It is, of course, desirable to have original results in a Master's thesis but this is not mandatory by law. The quality is controlled by the thesis advisor. A Master's thesis is normally not published but may contain parts that have been published by the author elsewhere.

Dissertation/PhD thesis: Demonstrates the author's ability to achieve original scientific results. It is mandatory to have original results in a PhD thesis and parts of it should definitely be published in modified form. The quality is controlled by the thesis advisor and a second referee. Quality control may and will differ among different schools, though.

Habilitation thesis: Demonstrates that the author is an established researcher in his/her field of expertise. A Habilitation thesis is either a collection of already published journal and/or conference papers ("cumulative thesis") or a monograph. The quality is controlled by several (external) referees. Again, quality control may vary. Habilitation is only known in Middle Europe and, to some extent, Eastern Europe; it corresponds to achieving tenure (at the level of associate professor) at US universities.

Patent Descriptions

Contents: Description of an innovation for which a patent is sought, including a specification of the scope of the protection sought. So-called claims describe the essential features of the innovation and specify what will infringe the patent. What is patentable depends on the country where the patent application is filed.

Contents: Description of an innovation for which a patent is sought, including a specification of the scope of the protection sought. So-called claims describe the essential features of the innovation and specify what will infringe the patent. What is patentable depends on the country where the patent application is filed.

Originality: Patents can only be sought for *previously unpublished* material. One needs to make a case that one's innovation differs from previous patents and technology.

Patent Descriptions

Contents: Description of an innovation for which a patent is sought, including a specification of the scope of the protection sought. So-called claims describe the essential features of the innovation and specify what will infringe the patent. What is patentable depends on the country where the patent application is filed.

Originality: Patents can only be sought for *previously unpublished* material. One needs to make a case that one's innovation differs from previous patents and technology.

Authorship: Typically written or, at least, re-worded by patent lawyers. Patent applications tend to be filed and financed by companies.

Patent Descriptions

Contents: Description of an innovation for which a patent is sought, including a specification of the scope of the protection sought. So-called claims describe the essential features of the innovation and specify what will infringe the patent. What is patentable depends on the country where the patent application is filed.

Originality: Patents can only be sought for *previously unpublished* material. One needs to make a case that one's innovation differs from previous patents and technology.

Authorship: Typically written or, at least, re-worded by patent lawyers. Patent applications tend to be filed and financed by companies.

Production, organization: Patents, once granted, are published by patent offices.

UNIV. SALZBURG
COMPUTERWISSENSCHAFTEN

Patent Descriptions

Contents: Description of an innovation for which a patent is sought, including a specification of the scope of the protection sought. So-called claims describe the essential features of the innovation and specify what will infringe the patent. What is patentable depends on the country where the patent application is filed.

Originality: Patents can only be sought for *previously unpublished* material. One needs to make a case that one's innovation differs from previous patents and technology.

Authorship: Typically written or, at least, re-worded by patent lawyers. Patent applications tend to be filed and financed by companies.

Production, organization: Patents, once granted, are published by patent offices.

Quality control: *Absolutely no quality control* – at least when seen from a scientific point of view!

Patent Descriptions

- Quote from a US colleague regarding the scientific “quality” of his patent:

  As for the patent, that was initiated and written by a patent lawyer here at XYZ. When I reviewed the application that he wrote, I told him that it reads nothing like my concept. He explained that it’s not supposed to. It’s supposed to be written in legalese in such a way as to be as general as possible and still be patentable. When the patent was actually issued a few years later, I was quite surprised. I’m afraid to even read the patent for fear of what it actually says. Thus I am not sure if my actual concept is actually patented or not, but I’ll assume that it is.

UNIV. SALZBURG
COMPUTERWISSENSCHAFTEN

Bibliographic Data

- The bibliographic data of a publication is the information necessary
  - for the unique identification of the publication, and
  - for being able to find the publication in libraries or to order it from publishing companies, research institutions, remote libraries etc.
- From this definition and from the descriptions of the various types of publications on the previous slides the information items required to provide a complete bibliographic identification of a publication are easily inferred.

International Standard Book Number

- The International Standard Book Number (ISBN) uniquely identifies books and book-like products world-wide. The ISBN system has been adopted by more than 170 countries. It used to be a 10-digit number (“ISBN-10”).

International Standard Book Number

- The International Standard Book Number (ISBN) uniquely identifies books and book-like products world-wide. The ISBN system has been adopted by more than 170 countries. It used to be a 10-digit number ("ISBN-10").
- The ISBN scheme is based on the Standard Book Numbering (SBN) system introduced in Great Britain in 1968.
- Approved as ISO standard 2108 in 1970.
- International coordination by "Staatsbibliothek zu Berlin".

- The International Standard Book Number (ISBN) uniquely identifies books and book-like products world-wide. The ISBN system has been adopted by more than 170 countries. It used to be a 10-digit number (“ISBN-10”).
- The ISBN scheme is based on the Standard Book Numbering (SBN) system introduced in Great Britain in 1968.
- Approved as ISO standard 2108 in 1970.
- International coordination by “Staatsbibliothek zu Berlin”.
- An ISBN is specific for its particular title, and needs to be changed if the title undergoes a major revision or extension.
- When printed, the ISBN is always preceded by the Latin letters “ISBN”.
- Once assigned, an ISBN can never be reused to denote a different book.

International Standard Book Number

- The International Standard Book Number (ISBN) uniquely identifies books and book-like products world-wide. The ISBN system has been adopted by more than 170 countries. It used to be a 10-digit number (“ISBN-10”).
- The ISBN scheme is based on the Standard Book Numbering (SBN) system introduced in Great Britain in 1968.
- Approved as ISO standard 2108 in 1970.
- International coordination by “Staatsbibliothek zu Berlin”.
- An ISBN is specific for its particular title, and needs to be changed if the title undergoes a major revision or extension.
- When printed, the ISBN is always preceded by the Latin letters “ISBN”.
- Once assigned, an ISBN can never be reused to denote a different book.
- Since 01-Jan-2007, thirteen-digit ISBNs are in use.
- The shift from ISBN-10 to ISBN-13 was motivated by two main reasons:
  1. To expand the numbering capacity of the ISBN system and remedy numbering shortages in some areas of the world;
  2. To align the ISBN scheme with the global EAN.UCC identification system.

- A new ISBN-13 consists of the following five elements:
  - Prefix element: Three-digit number made available by EAN International. Currently, “978” is used as prefix.
  - Registration group element: It identifies the country, geographical region, or language area. (E.g., “3” stands for “German”.)
  - Registrant element: It identifies a particular publisher within a registration group.
  - Publication element: It identifies a specific (edition of a) publication.

International Standard Book Number

- A new ISBN-13 consists of the following five elements:
  - Prefix element: Three-digit number made available by EAN International. Currently, “978” is used as prefix.
  - Registration group element: It identifies the country, geographical region, or language area. (E.g., “3” stands for “German”.)
  - Registrant element: It identifies a particular publisher within a registration group.
  - Publication element: It identifies a specific (edition of a) publication.
  - Check digit: It is calculated as follows (quoted from the ISBN User’s Manual):

Each of the first 12 digits of the ISBN is alternately multiplied by 1 and 3. The check digit is equal to 10 minus the remainder resulting from dividing the sum of the weighted products of the first 12 digits by 10 with one exception. If this calculation results in an apparent check digit of 10, the check digit is 0.

International Standard Book Number

- A new ISBN-13 consists of the following five elements:
  - Prefix element: Three-digit number made available by EAN International. Currently, “978” is used as prefix.
  - Registration group element: It identifies the country, geographical region, or language area. (E.g., “3” stands for “German”.)
  - Registrant element: It identifies a particular publisher within a registration group.
  - Publication element: It identifies a specific (edition of a) publication.
  - Check digit: It is calculated as follows (quoted from the ISBN User’s Manual):

  Each of the first 12 digits of the ISBN is alternately multiplied by 1 and 3. The check digit is equal to 10 minus the remainder resulting from dividing the sum of the weighted products of the first 12 digits by 10 with one exception. If this calculation results in an apparent check digit of 10, the check digit is 0.

  E.g.: 978-0-11-000222 is assigned the check digit 4, since
  $9 + 21 + 8 + 0 + 1 + 3 + 0 + 0 + 0 + 6 + 2 + 6 = 56$, and
  $(10 - (56 \bmod 10)) \bmod 10 = 4$.

UNIV. SALZBURG
COMPUTERWISSENSCHAFTEN

- A new ISBN-13 consists of the following five elements:
  - Prefix element: Three-digit number made available by EAN International. Currently, “978” is used as prefix.
  - Registration group element: It identifies the country, geographical region, or language area. (E.g., “3” stands for “German”.)
  - Registrant element: It identifies a particular publisher within a registration group.
  - Publication element: It identifies a specific (edition of a) publication.
  - Check digit: It is calculated as follows (quoted from the ISBN User’s Manual):

  Each of the first 12 digits of the ISBN is alternately multiplied by 1 and 3. The check digit is equal to 10 minus the remainder resulting from dividing the sum of the weighted products of the first 12 digits by 10 with one exception. If this calculation results in an apparent check digit of 10, the check digit is 0.

  E.g.: 978-0-11-000222 is assigned the check digit 4, since
  $9+21+8+0+1+3+0+0+0+6+2+6=56$, and
  $(10-(56 \bmod 10)) \bmod 10 = 4$.

- These five elements are separated by hyphens or spaces when displayed in human-readable form. Note that the middle three elements are of variable length.

Digital Object Identifiers

- The main problem of using URLs for specifying electronic documents is their lack of persistency: Since the location rather than the actual document is specified, access to a document is lost once the location of the document changes.

Digital Object Identifiers

- The main problem of using URLs for specifying electronic documents is their lack of persistency: Since the location rather than the actual document is specified, access to a document is lost once the location of the document changes.
- A Digital Object Identifier (DOI) provides a unique and persistent name for electronic documents.
- The document associated with a given DOI can be located by resorting to a DOI resolver, or by appending the DOI to the URL of the DOI System Proxy Server `http://dx.doi.org/`.
- DOI names can be used to identify free material as well as objects of commercial value.
- Publishers that offer online publishing programs are among the main users of the DOI system.

Bibliographic Data: Monographs

- family name, first name (initials) of the author(s),
- title,
- number of edition,
- (number of pages,)
- name of publishing company, (location of publishing company,)
- year of publication,
- ISBN,
- name of series, number of book within series (e.g. LNCS),
- family name and first name (initials) of the editor(s).

UNIV. SALZBURG
COMPUTERWISSENSCHAFTEN

Bibliographic Data: Journal Articles

- family name, first name (initials) of the author(s),
- title,
- name of journal,
- volume and number,
- year,
- first page and last page of the article,
- (name of publishing company, location of company).

Bibliographic Data: Articles in Collections

- family name, first name (initials) of the author(s),
- title,
- title of collection,
- family name and first name (initials) of the editor(s),
- name of publishing company, (location of publishing company,)
- year of publication,
- ISBN,
- first page and last page of the article.

Bibliographic Data: Conference Papers

- family name, first name (initials) of the author(s),
- title,
- title of proceedings,
- (name of conference, location of conference, date of conference),
- name of publishing company, (location of publishing company,)
- family name and first name (initials) of the editor(s),
- year of publication,
- first page and last page of the paper.

UNIV. SALZBURG
COMPUTERWISSENSCHAFTEN

Bibliographic Data: Technical Reports

- family name, first name (initials) of the author(s),
- title,
- title of technical report series,
- number of the technical report,
- name and address of the institution publishing the series,
- year of publication.

UNIV. SALZBURG
COMPUTERWISSENSCHAFTEN

Bibliographic Data: Theses

- family name, first name (initials) of the author,
- title,
- name and address of research institution,
- type of thesis,
- year of publication.

UNIV. SALZBURG
COMPUTERWISSENSCHAFTEN

Review Journals and Bibliographies

- *Review journals* are journals that systematically collect the publications appearing in a particular subject area and publish short summaries (“reviews”) of each publication. The summaries are ordered according to some keyword index. Also, various further indices help to find publications in one’s field of interest. A review also contains a critical evaluation of the results presented. Unfortunately, it may take several years until a new result finds its way into a review journal.

Review Journals and Bibliographies

- *Review journals* are journals that systematically collect the publications appearing in a particular subject area and publish short summaries ("reviews") of each publication. The summaries are ordered according to some keyword index. Also, various further indices help to find publications in one's field of interest. A review also contains a critical evaluation of the results presented. Unfortunately, it may take several years until a new result finds its way into a review journal.
- Sample review journals:
  - ACM Computing Reviews (http://computingreviews.com),
  - ACM Guide to Computing Literature (https://dl.acm.org/dl.cfm),
  - Mathematical Reviews (http://www.ams.org/publications/math-reviews/math-reviews),
  - Zentralblatt für Mathematik (https://zbmath.org),
  - SIAM Review (https://www.siam.org/Publications/Journals/SIAM-Review-SIREV).

Review Journals and Bibliographies

- *Review journals* are journals that systematically collect the publications appearing in a particular subject area and publish short summaries ("reviews") of each publication. The summaries are ordered according to some keyword index. Also, various further indices help to find publications in one's field of interest. A review also contains a critical evaluation of the results presented. Unfortunately, it may take several years until a new result finds its way into a review journal.
- Sample review journals:
  - ACM Computing Reviews (http://computingreviews.com),
  - ACM Guide to Computing Literature (https://dl.acm.org/dl.cfm),
  - Mathematical Reviews (http://www.ams.org/publications/math-reviews/math-reviews),
  - Zentralblatt für Mathematik (https://zbmath.org),
  - SIAM Review (https://www.siam.org/Publications/Journals/SIAM-Review-SIREV).
- The importance of review journals has been declining steadily during the last decade.

UNIV. SALZBURG
COMPUTERWISSENSCHAFTEN

Review Journals and Bibliographies

- *Review journals* are journals that systematically collect the publications appearing in a particular subject area and publish short summaries ("reviews") of each publication. The summaries are ordered according to some keyword index. Also, various further indices help to find publications in one's field of interest. A review also contains a critical evaluation of the results presented. Unfortunately, it may take several years until a new result finds its way into a review journal.
- Sample review journals:
  - ACM Computing Reviews (http://computingreviews.com),
  - ACM Guide to Computing Literature (https://dl.acm.org/dl.cfm),
  - Mathematical Reviews (http://www.ams.org/publications/math-reviews/math-reviews),
  - Zentralblatt für Mathematik (https://zbmath.org),
  - SIAM Review (https://www.siam.org/Publications/Journals/SIAM-Review-SIREV).
- The importance of review journals has been declining steadily during the last decade.
- A *bibliography* on a particular area typically consists of an author index, a keyword (subject index), and a survey on the area together with literature references.

Science Citation Index and Science Citation Index Expanded

- The Science Citation Index was developed by the "Institute for Scientific Information" (ISI), then offered by Thompson Reuters, and is now owned by Clarivate Analytics.
- Its larger version — the Science Citation Index Expanded (SCIE) — covers more than 8 500 journals across 150+ disciplines, from 1900 to the present.
- It is available online via the subscription-based Web of Science.

Science Citation Index and Science Citation Index Expanded

- The Science Citation Index was developed by the "Institute for Scientific Information" (ISI), then offered by Thompson Reuters, and is now owned by Clarivate Analytics.
- Its larger version — the Science Citation Index Expanded (SCIE) — covers more than 8 500 journals across 150+ disciplines, from 1900 to the present.
- It is available online via the subscription-based Web of Science.
- By means of this research index it is possible to search for relevant literature starting from an available literature item of year y "into the future", i.e., in the years $y+1, \ldots,$ present year. This is possible since all journal articles and refereed conference proceedings stored in the database are analyzed with respect to their list of references.

Science Citation Index and Science Citation Index Expanded

- The Science Citation Index was developed by the "Institute for Scientific Information" (ISI), then offered by Thompson Reuters, and is now owned by Clarivate Analytics.
- Its larger version — the Science Citation Index Expanded (SCIE) — covers more than 8 500 journals across 150+ disciplines, from 1900 to the present.
- It is available online via the subscription-based Web of Science.
- By means of this research index it is possible to search for relevant literature starting from an available literature item of year y "into the future", i.e., in the years $y + 1, \ldots,$ present year. This is possible since all journal articles and refereed conference proceedings stored in the database are analyzed with respect to their list of references.
- The SCIE can be used to
  - search for literature, and
  - rank journals according to their "quality" (Journal Impact Factor).

Science Citation Index and Science Citation Index Expanded

- The Science Citation Index was developed by the "Institute for Scientific Information" (ISI), then offered by Thompson Reuters, and is now owned by Clarivate Analytics.
- Its larger version — the Science Citation Index Expanded (SCIE) — covers more than 8 500 journals across 150+ disciplines, from 1900 to the present.
- It is available online via the subscription-based Web of Science.
- By means of this research index it is possible to search for relevant literature starting from an available literature item of year y "into the future", i.e., in the years $y+1, \ldots,$ present year. This is possible since all journal articles and refereed conference proceedings stored in the database are analyzed with respect to their list of references.
- The SCIE can be used to
  - search for literature, and
  - rank journals according to their "quality" (Journal Impact Factor).
- This database can be accessed at UBS at Salzburg, see www.ubs.sbg.ac.at/dbis/.

UNIV. SALZBURG
COMPUTERWISSENSCHAFTEN

- WWW:
  - Standard search engines;
  - Science-specific search engines.

UNIV. SALZBURG
COMPUTERWISSENSCHAFTEN

- WWW:
  - Standard search engines;
  - Science-specific search engines.
- Searchable WWW libraries published by scientific organizations and publishers, e.g., ACM's Digital Library (https://dl.acm.org/dl.cfm), Elsevier, Springer-Verlag, World Scientific Publishing.

Searching, Finding and Retrieving Literature

- WWW:
  - Standard search engines;
  - Science-specific search engines.
- Searchable WWW libraries published by scientific organizations and publishers, e.g., ACM's Digital Library (https://dl.acm.org/dl.cfm), Elsevier, Springer-Verlag, World Scientific Publishing.
- Libraries.
- Review journals.
- Science Citation Index.

Searching, Finding and Retrieving Literature

- WWW:
  - Standard search engines;
  - Science-specific search engines.
- Searchable WWW libraries published by scientific organizations and publishers, e.g., ACM's Digital Library (https://dl.acm.org/dl.cfm), Elsevier, Springer-Verlag, World Scientific Publishing.
- Libraries.
- Review journals.
- Science Citation Index.
- Online compilations, e.g., Computing Science Journals (https://dblp.uni-trier.de/db/journals/), Directory of Open Access Journals (https://doaj.org/), The Computing Research Repository (CoRR) (https://arxiv.org/corr/home).
- Ordering at publishing companies, inter-library loan ("Fernleihe").

Science-Specific Search Engines

- Google Scholar at `https://scholar.google.com/`.
- ScienceDirect (by Elsevier) at `https://www.sciencedirect.com`
- CiteSeer (by NEC and PSU) at `http://citeseerx.ist.psu.edu/index`
- Scopus at `https://www.scopus.com`.
- PubMed at `https://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/`.

UNIV. SALZBURG
COMPUTERWISSENSCHAFTEN

How to Obtain a Paper

1. Try to obtain an electronic copy of the paper via the electronic access "Elektronische Zeitschriften" of UBS Salzburg (www.ubs.sbg.ac.at/dbis/).

How to Obtain a Paper

1. Try to obtain an electronic copy of the paper via the electronic access "Elektronische Zeitschriften" of UBS Salzburg (www.ubs.sbg.ac.at/dbis/).
2. Try to find the author on the WWW and check his/her home page.
3. Send an email to the author and ask for an electronic copy of the paper. (You may also want to ask for any more recent paper on the same subject!)

UNIV. SALZBURG
COMPUTERWISSENSCHAFTEN

How to Obtain a Paper

1. Try to obtain an electronic copy of the paper via the electronic access "Elektronische Zeitschriften" of UBS Salzburg (www.ubs.sbg.ac.at/dbis/).
2. Try to find the author on the WWW and check his/her home page.
3. Send an email to the author and ask for an electronic copy of the paper. (You may also want to ask for any more recent paper on the same subject!)
4. Ask your advisors, colleagues, and friends.
5. Send a letter to the author by conventional mail and ask for a "reprint" or a "preprint".
6. Shop around libraries.
7. Go for inter-library loan.

UNIV. SALZBURG
COMPUTERWISSENSCHAFTEN

1 Scientific Literature and Scientific Presentations

Journal Impact Factor and Eigenfactor

- The Journal Impact Factor (JIF) is a measure of the average rate at which a journal is cited in the scientific literature. It is published in the "Journal Citation Reports" (JCR) by Clarivate Analytics, based on entries in the Science Citation Index Expanded and the Social Sciences Citation Index. (The JCR tracks about 11 500 journals.)

UNIV. SALZBURG
COMPUTERWISSENSCHAFTEN

Journal Impact Factor and Eigenfactor

- The Journal Impact Factor (JIF) is a measure of the average rate at which a journal is cited in the scientific literature. It is published in the “Journal Citation Reports” (JCR) by Clarivate Analytics, based on entries in the Science Citation Index Expanded and the Social Sciences Citation Index. (The JCR tracks about 11 500 journals.)
- Assume that we want to compute the JIF of a journal for 2015:
  - S := number of papers and reviews published in the journal of interest in the years 2013 and 2014.

Journal Impact Factor and Eigenfactor

- The Journal Impact Factor (JIF) is a measure of the average rate at which a journal is cited in the scientific literature. It is published in the “Journal Citation Reports” (JCR) by Clarivate Analytics, based on entries in the Science Citation Index Expanded and the Social Sciences Citation Index. (The JCR tracks about 11 500 journals.)
- Assume that we want to compute the JIF of a journal for 2015:
  - S := number of papers and reviews published in the journal of interest in the years 2013 and 2014.
  - R := number of publications in the year 2015 which refer to the journal of interest in the years 2013 and 2014.
  - Then the JIF for this journal for 2015 is given by R/S.

Journal Impact Factor and Eigenfactor

- The Journal Impact Factor (JIF) is a measure of the average rate at which a journal is cited in the scientific literature. It is published in the "Journal Citation Reports" (JCR) by Clarivate Analytics, based on entries in the Science Citation Index Expanded and the Social Sciences Citation Index. (The JCR tracks about 11 500 journals.)
- Assume that we want to compute the JIF of a journal for 2015:
  - S := number of papers and reviews published in the journal of interest in the years 2013 and 2014.
  - R := number of publications in the year 2015 which refer to the journal of interest in the years 2013 and 2014.
  - Then the JIF for this journal for 2015 is given by R/S.
- The JIF is used
  - to assess the quality of journals,
  - to assess the qualification of scholars,
  - as a decision criterion in which journal to publish, for granting funds, ...

UNIV. SALZBURG
COMPUTERWISSENSCHAFTEN

Journal Impact Factor and Eigenfactor

- The Journal Impact Factor (JIF) is a measure of the average rate at which a journal is cited in the scientific literature. It is published in the “Journal Citation Reports” (JCR) by Clarivate Analytics, based on entries in the Science Citation Index Expanded and the Social Sciences Citation Index. (The JCR tracks about 11 500 journals.)
- Assume that we want to compute the JIF of a journal for 2015:
  - S := number of papers and reviews published in the journal of interest in the years 2013 and 2014.
  - R := number of publications in the year 2015 which refer to the journal of interest in the years 2013 and 2014.
  - Then the JIF for this journal for 2015 is given by R/S.
- The JIF is used
  - to assess the quality of journals,
  - to assess the qualification of scholars,
  - as a decision criterion in which journal to publish, for granting funds, ...
- The Eigenfactor (`http://eigenfactor.org/`), developed by West and Bergstrom at the University of Washington, is a free alternative that also attempts to rank journals.

Journal Impact Factor and Eigenfactor

- The Journal Impact Factor (JIF) is a measure of the average rate at which a journal is cited in the scientific literature. It is published in the "Journal Citation Reports" (JCR) by Clarivate Analytics, based on entries in the Science Citation Index Expanded and the Social Sciences Citation Index. (The JCR tracks about 11 500 journals.)
- Assume that we want to compute the JIF of a journal for 2015:
  - S := number of papers and reviews published in the journal of interest in the years 2013 and 2014.
  - R := number of publications in the year 2015 which refer to the journal of interest in the years 2013 and 2014.
  - Then the JIF for this journal for 2015 is given by R/S.
- The JIF is used
  - to assess the quality of journals,
  - to assess the qualification of scholars,
  - as a decision criterion in which journal to publish, for granting funds, ...
- The Eigenfactor (`http://eigenfactor.org/`), developed by West and Bergstrom at the University of Washington, is a free alternative that also attempts to rank journals.
- Its ranking scheme is similar to but more complicated than the JIF ranking. It is regarded to be more robust than the JIF ranking.

Problems With the Impact Factor

- Not all publication outlets – and not even all journals – are covered; publishers have to pay to have their journals included into the JIF ranking!
- It is entirely at the discretion of Clarivate Analytics which types of publications within a journal count as “citable”.

UNIV. SALZBURG
COMPUTERWISSENSCHAFTEN

Problems With the Impact Factor

- Not all publication outlets – and not even all journals – are covered; publishers have to pay to have their journals included into the JIF ranking!
- It is entirely at the discretion of Clarivate Analytics which types of publications within a journal count as “citable”.
- Journals and authors have come up with “creative” means for boosting their JIFs.
- As a result, 66 journals were banned from the 2013 ranking because of excessive self-citation and/or citation stacking.

UNIV. SALZBURG
COMPUTERWISSENSCHAFTEN

Problems With the Impact Factor

- Not all publication outlets – and not even all journals – are covered; publishers have to pay to have their journals included into the JIF ranking!
- It is entirely at the discretion of Clarivate Analytics which types of publications within a journal count as “citable”.
- Journals and authors have come up with “creative” means for boosting their JIFs.
- As a result, 66 journals were banned from the 2013 ranking because of excessive self-citation and/or citation stacking.
- The differences among different articles in journals are hidden: E.g., review articles tend to attract considerably more citations than research papers.
- Even without massaging the JIF results, the JIF of “Acta Crystallographica Section A” climbed from about 2 in 2008 to nearly 50 in 2009 — due to 6 600 citations attracted by one review paper!

Problems With the Impact Factor

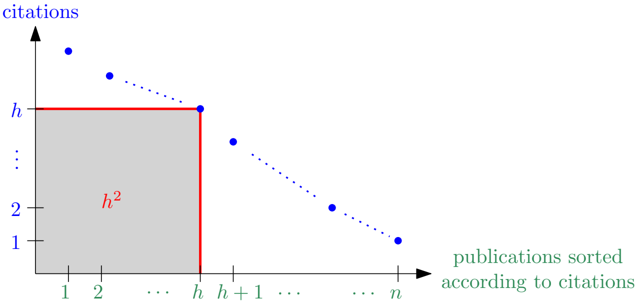
- Not all publication outlets – and not even all journals – are covered; publishers have to pay to have their journals included into the JIF ranking!
- It is entirely at the discretion of Clarivate Analytics which types of publications within a journal count as “citable”.
- Journals and authors have come up with “creative” means for boosting their JIFs.
- As a result, 66 journals were banned from the 2013 ranking because of excessive self-citation and/or citation stacking.
- The differences among different articles in journals are hidden: E.g., review articles tend to attract considerably more citations than research papers.
- Even without massaging the JIF results, the JIF of “Acta Crystallographica Section A” climbed from about 2 in 2008 to nearly 50 in 2009 — due to 6 600 citations attracted by one review paper!
- The percentage of total citations that occur in the first two years after publication differs significantly among disciplines, ranging from 1–3% in math and CS to 5–8% in the bio-sciences.
- The JIF depends on the subject and scientific discipline: High JIFs are found in the bio-sciences, relatively low JIFs prevail in CS: The top-ranked math/CS journals have a JIF well below 10, and several “good” journals are below 2, while top-ranked journals in the bio-sciences hover in the range 30–50!

Problems With the Impact Factor

- Not all publication outlets – and not even all journals – are covered; publishers have to pay to have their journals included into the JIF ranking!
- It is entirely at the discretion of Clarivate Analytics which types of publications within a journal count as “citable”.
- Journals and authors have come up with “creative” means for boosting their JIFs.
- As a result, 66 journals were banned from the 2013 ranking because of excessive self-citation and/or citation stacking.
- The differences among different articles in journals are hidden: E.g., review articles tend to attract considerably more citations than research papers.
- Even without massaging the JIF results, the JIF of “Acta Crystallographica Section A” climbed from about 2 in 2008 to nearly 50 in 2009 — due to 6 600 citations attracted by one review paper!
- The percentage of total citations that occur in the first two years after publication differs significantly among disciplines, ranging from 1–3% in math and CS to 5–8% in the bio-sciences.
- The JIF depends on the subject and scientific discipline: High JIFs are found in the bio-sciences, relatively low JIFs prevail in CS: The top-ranked math/CS journals have a JIF well below 10, and several “good” journals are below 2, while top-ranked journals in the bio-sciences hover in the range 30–50!
- New branches of science have severe disadvantages.

H-Index

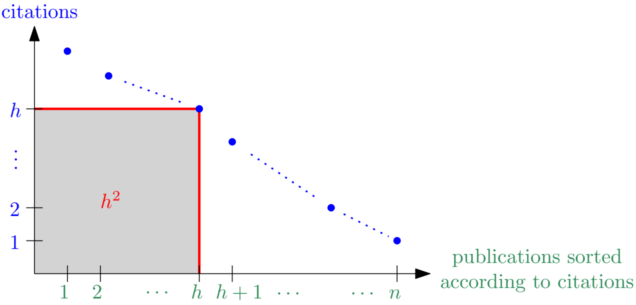
- Suggested in 2005 by J.E. Hirsch to measure the productivity and scientific impact of scholars.



H-Index

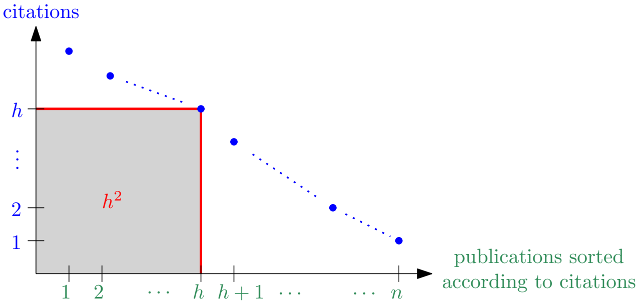
- Suggested in 2005 by J.E. Hirsch to measure the productivity and scientific impact of scholars.
- According to Hirsch,

  a scholar has h-index h if h of the scholar's n papers have at least h citations each, and the other $n - h$ papers have at most h citations each.



- Suggested in 2005 by J.E. Hirsch to measure the productivity and scientific impact of scholars.
- According to Hirsch,

  a scholar has h-index h if h of the scholar's n papers have at least h citations each, and the other $n-h$ papers have at most h citations each.



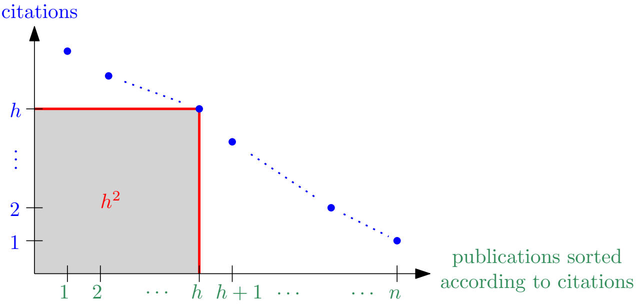
- Informally speaking, a scholar has h-index h if h is the side-length of the largest square that fits under the curve of (sorted) citations per publication.

H-Index

- Suggested in 2005 by J.E. Hirsch to measure the productivity and scientific impact of scholars.
- According to Hirsch,

  a scholar has h-index *h* if *h* of the scholar's *n* papers have at least *h* citations each, and the other $n - h$ papers have at most *h* citations each.

- The h-index can be expected to be higher for truly influential scholars as compared to those who simply feed the paper mill.



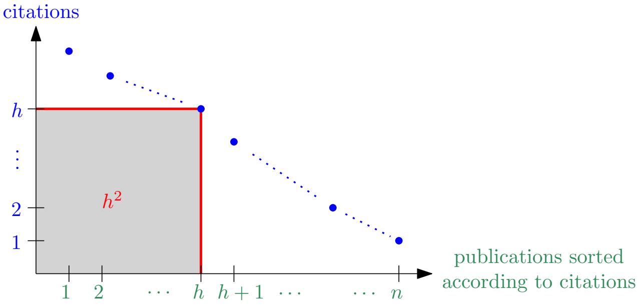
- Informally speaking, a scholar has h-index *h* if *h* is the side-length of the largest square that fits under the curve of (sorted) citations per publication.

H-Index

- Suggested in 2005 by J.E. Hirsch to measure the productivity and scientific impact of scholars.
- According to Hirsch,

  a scholar has h-index h if h of the scholar's n papers have at least h citations each, and the other $n - h$ papers have at most h citations each.

- The h-index can be expected to be higher for truly influential scholars as compared to those who simply feed the paper mill.
- However, the h-index does not account for particularly successful publications.

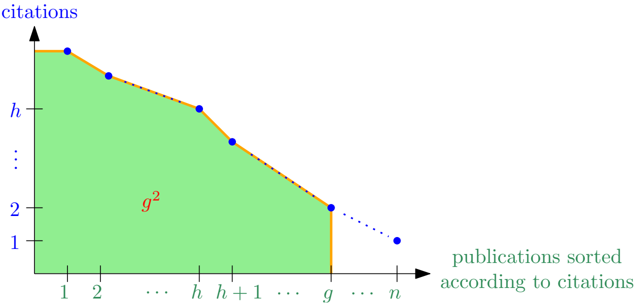


- Informally speaking, a scholar has h-index h if h is the side-length of the largest square that fits under the curve of (sorted) citations per publication.

G-Index

- The g-index was suggested in 2006 by L. Egghe. According to Egghe,

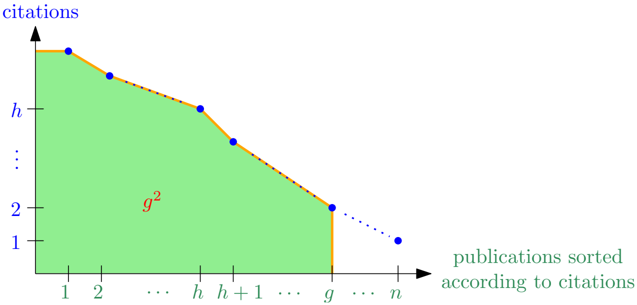
  a scholar has g-index g if the sum of the citations of the scholar's top g papers is at least g^2.



- The g-index was suggested in 2006 by L. Egghe. According to Egghe,

  a scholar has g-index g if the sum of the citations of the scholar's top g papers is at least g^2.
- Alternatively,

  a scholar has g-index g if the average citation number of the scholar's top g papers is at least g.

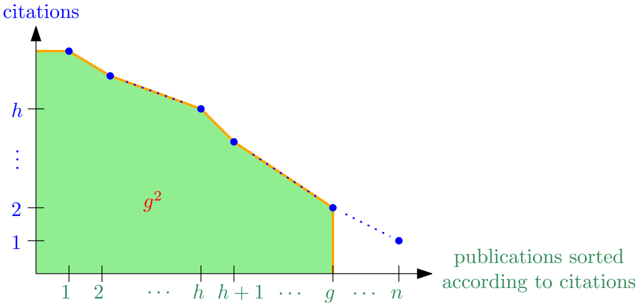


G-Index

- The g-index was suggested in 2006 by L. Egghe. According to Egghe,

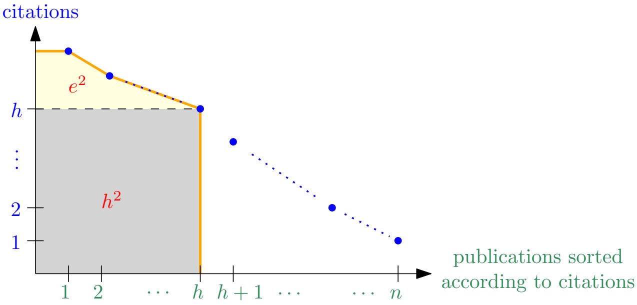
  a scholar has g-index g if the sum of the citations of the scholar's top g papers is at least g^2.
- Alternatively,

  a scholar has g-index g if the average citation number of the scholar's top g papers is at least g.
- The g-index tends to respond more accurately to particularly successful publications of a scholar. Note: $g \geq h$.



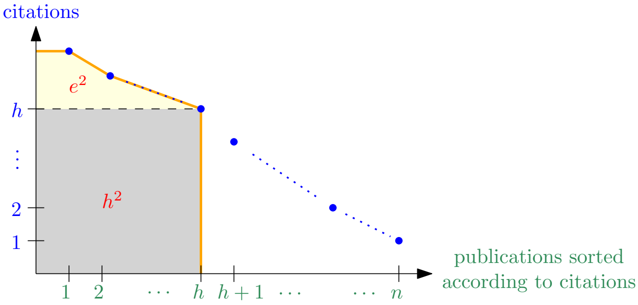
- The *e*-index also attempts to discriminate better between scholars with similar *h*-indices: According to C.-T. Zhang (2009),

  a scholar has e-index *e* if its *h* top-cited publications required to obtain an h-index of *h* have been cited $h^2 + e^2$ many times.



- The *e*-index also attempts to discriminate better between scholars with similar *h*-indices: According to C.-T. Zhang (2009),

  a scholar has e-index e if its h top-cited publications required to obtain an h-index of h have been cited $h^2 + e^2$ many times.



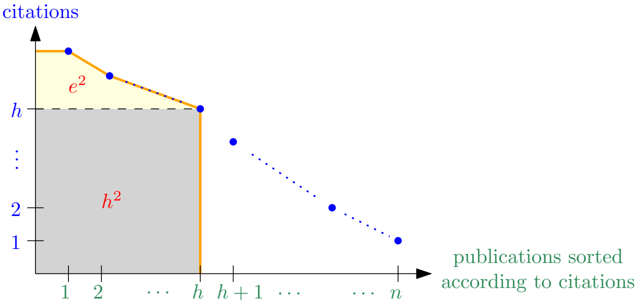
- That is, the e-index measures the surplus of citations beyond the theoretical minimum h^2 required to obtain an h-index of h.

E-Index and Other Indices

- The *e*-index also attempts to discriminate better between scholars with similar *h*-indices: According to C.-T. Zhang (2009),

  a scholar has e-index e if its h top-cited publications required to obtain an h-index of h have been cited $h^2 + e^2$ many times.

- Other indices:
  - The a-index equals the sum of citations of the top h publications divided by h.
  - The r-index equals the square root of the sum of citations of the top h publications.



- That is, the e-index measures the surplus of citations beyond the theoretical minimum h^2 required to obtain an h-index of h.

Problems of Citation-Based Bibliometric Indices

- Problematic basic hypothesis: More citations means more important papers means better scholar.

Problems of Citation-Based Bibliometric Indices

- Problematic basic hypothesis: More citations means more important papers means better scholar.
- There is absolutely no empirical foundation for this hypothesis!

Problems of Citation-Based Bibliometric Indices

- Problematic basic hypothesis: More citations means more important papers means better scholar.
- There is absolutely no empirical foundation for this hypothesis!
- Some publications are cited frequently as samples for how not to do it . . .

Problems of Citation-Based Bibliometric Indices

- Problematic basic hypothesis: More citations means more important papers means better scholar.
- There is absolutely no empirical foundation for this hypothesis!
- Some publications are cited frequently as samples for how not to do it . . .
- Working in a small (or new!) field may cause one's citation indices to stagnate.

UNIV. SALZBURG
COMPUTERWISSENSCHAFTEN

Problems of Citation-Based Bibliometric Indices

- Problematic basic hypothesis: More citations means more important papers means better scholar.
- There is absolutely no empirical foundation for this hypothesis!
- Some publications are cited frequently as samples for how not to do it . . .
- Working in a small (or new!) field may cause one's citation indices to stagnate.
- While it might be reasonable to assume that scholars who have large indices have indeed made a significant impact on their field, the converse conclusion is problematic:

Problems of Citation-Based Bibliometric Indices

- Problematic basic hypothesis: More citations means more important papers means better scholar.
- There is absolutely no empirical foundation for this hypothesis!
- Some publications are cited frequently as samples for how not to do it . . .
- Working in a small (or new!) field may cause one's citation indices to stagnate.
- While it might be reasonable to assume that scholars who have large indices have indeed made a significant impact on their field, the converse conclusion is problematic:
    - Scholars with short careers or few publications are strongly disadvantaged.
    - Publishing only one paper per year — even if it is truly stellar! — is likely not to result in a high citation index.
    - Hence, the h-indices of Kurt Gödel, Albert Einstein or Evariste Galois would be disastrously low!

UNIV. SALZBURG
COMPUTERWISSENSCHAFTEN

Problems of Citation-Based Bibliometric Indices

- Problematic basic hypothesis: More citations means more important papers means better scholar.
- There is absolutely no empirical foundation for this hypothesis!
- Some publications are cited frequently as samples for how not to do it . . .
- Working in a small (or new!) field may cause one's citation indices to stagnate.
- While it might be reasonable to assume that scholars who have large indices have indeed made a significant impact on their field, the converse conclusion is problematic:
  - Scholars with short careers or few publications are strongly disadvantaged.
  - Publishing only one paper per year — even if it is truly stellar! — is likely not to result in a high citation index.
  - Hence, the h-indices of Kurt Gödel, Albert Einstein or Evariste Galois would be disastrously low!
- In any case, all indices measure the life-time achievement of scholars. That is, they tend to increase with age!

UNIV. SALZBURG
COMPUTERWISSENSCHAFTEN

Problems of Citation-Based Bibliometric Indices

- Technical problems:
  - The computation of citation indices requires accurate citation databases and adequate tools.
  - Different tools and/or different databases may result in strikingly different indices.

Problems of Citation-Based Bibliometric Indices

- Technical problems:
  - The computation of citation indices requires accurate citation databases and adequate tools.
  - Different tools and/or different databases may result in strikingly different indices.
  - Not all publications are treated equally in the relevant databases: Books or conference proceedings are treated inconsistently.
  - Hence, citations to publications in books or proceedings may be completely covered, completely missing, or anywhere in between.

UNIV. SALZBURG
COMPUTERWISSENSCHAFTEN

Problems of Citation-Based Bibliometric Indices

- Technical problems:
  - The computation of citation indices requires accurate citation databases and adequate tools.
  - Different tools and/or different databases may result in strikingly different indices.
  - Not all publications are treated equally in the relevant databases: Books or conference proceedings are treated inconsistently.
  - Hence, citations to publications in books or proceedings may be completely covered, completely missing, or anywhere in between.
  - No automated means for removing self-citations are available. Note that this tends to boost the indices of scholars who have lots of publications!

UNIV. SALZBURG
COMPUTERWISSENSCHAFTEN

Problems of Citation-Based Bibliometric Indices

- Technical problems:
  - The computation of citation indices requires accurate citation databases and adequate tools.
  - Different tools and/or different databases may result in strikingly different indices.
  - Not all publications are treated equally in the relevant databases: Books or conference proceedings are treated inconsistently.
  - Hence, citations to publications in books or proceedings may be completely covered, completely missing, or anywhere in between.
  - No automated means for removing self-citations are available. Note that this tends to boost the indices of scholars who have lots of publications!
  - It is virtually impossible to compute indices automatically for scholars whose names are common.

Problems of Citation-Based Bibliometric Indices

- Technical problems:
  - The computation of citation indices requires accurate citation databases and adequate tools.
  - Different tools and/or different databases may result in strikingly different indices.
  - Not all publications are treated equally in the relevant databases: Books or conference proceedings are treated inconsistently.
  - Hence, citations to publications in books or proceedings may be completely covered, completely missing, or anywhere in between.
  - No automated means for removing self-citations are available. Note that this tends to boost the indices of scholars who have lots of publications!
  - It is virtually impossible to compute indices automatically for scholars whose names are common.
- A wide-spread quest for high citation indices is likely to sparkle yet another significant increase of the number of scientific publications by motivating scholars to “feed the paper mill” by trying to “approximate the least-publishable unit”, and to increase their indices by, e.g., lots of self-citations.

UNIV. SALZBURG
COMPUTERWISSENSCHAFTEN

Problems of Citation-Based Bibliometric Indices

- Technical problems:
  - The computation of citation indices requires accurate citation databases and adequate tools.
  - Different tools and/or different databases may result in strikingly different indices.
  - Not all publications are treated equally in the relevant databases: Books or conference proceedings are treated inconsistently.
  - Hence, citations to publications in books or proceedings may be completely covered, completely missing, or anywhere in between.
  - No automated means for removing self-citations are available. Note that this tends to boost the indices of scholars who have lots of publications!
  - It is virtually impossible to compute indices automatically for scholars whose names are common.
- A wide-spread quest for high citation indices is likely to sparkle yet another significant increase of the number of scientific publications by motivating scholars to “feed the paper mill” by trying to “approximate the least-publishable unit”, and to increase their indices by, e.g., lots of self-citations.
- In any case, one can only compare scholars within the same discipline and based on the same database!!

UNIV. SALZBURG
COMPUTERWISSENSCHAFTEN

Open Researcher and Contributor ID

- Problem with all bibliometric indices: Less than trivial to compute automatically for scholars whose names are common.
- Hence, there is a need to uniquely identify scholars — world-wide!

Open Researcher and Contributor ID

- Problem with all bibliometric indices: Less than trivial to compute automatically for scholars whose names are common.
- Hence, there is a need to uniquely identify scholars — world-wide!
- The Open Researcher and Contributor ID (ORCID) is a persistent digital identifier that allows to distinguish different scholars.
- It is an alphanumeric code. E.g., Martin Held's ORCID is 0000-0003-0728-7545.
- An ORCID can be obtained by registering (for free) at orcid.org.

Open Researcher and Contributor ID

- Problem with all bibliometric indices: Less than trivial to compute automatically for scholars whose names are common.
- Hence, there is a need to uniquely identify scholars — world-wide!
- The Open Researcher and Contributor ID (ORCID) is a persistent digital identifier that allows to distinguish different scholars.
- It is an alphanumeric code. E.g., Martin Held's ORCID is 0000-0003-0728-7545.
- An ORCID can be obtained by registering (for free) at orcid.org.
- Starting from 01-Jan-2016, all scholars are required to provide an ORCID when submitting a grant proposal to the Austrian Science Fund (FWF).
- Other (funding) organizations, institutions, and publishers have already followed or are likely to follow.

Open Researcher and Contributor ID

- Pros of ORCIDs:
  - ORCIDs allow a clear distinction between the many scholars who share identical surnames, such as Müller, Mitchell, Wang or Lee.

UNIV. SALZBURG
COMPUTERWISSENSCHAFTEN

Open Researcher and Contributor ID

- Pros of ORCIDs:
  - ORCIDs allow a clear distinction between the many scholars who share identical surnames, such as Müller, Mitchell, Wang or Lee.
  - ORCIDs allow to “follow” scholars after name changes.

UNIV. SALZBURG
COMPUTERWISSENSCHAFTEN

Open Researcher and Contributor ID

- Pros of ORCIDs:
  - ORCIDs allow a clear distinction between the many scholars who share identical surnames, such as Müller, Mitchell, Wang or Lee.
  - ORCIDs allow to "follow" scholars after name changes.
  - ORCIDs allow to navigate around different spellings of names (e.g., due to diacritical signs) or inconsistencies resulting from abbreviations of given names (e.g., J. Mitchell vs. J.S.B. Mitchell).

UNIV. SALZBURG
COMPUTERWISSENSCHAFTEN

Open Researcher and Contributor ID

- Pros of ORCIDs:
  - ORCIDs allow a clear distinction between the many scholars who share identical surnames, such as Müller, Mitchell, Wang or Lee.
  - ORCIDs allow to “follow” scholars after name changes.
  - ORCIDs allow to navigate around different spellings of names (e.g., due to diacritical signs) or inconsistencies resulting from abbreviations of given names (e.g., J. Mitchell vs. J.S.B. Mitchell).
- Cons and problems of ORCIDs:
  - It requires an administrative effort to link one’s prior work to one’s ORCID.
  - Currently, orcid.org does not harvest data automatically.

Open Researcher and Contributor ID

- Pros of ORCIDs:
  - ORCIDs allow a clear distinction between the many scholars who share identical surnames, such as Müller, Mitchell, Wang or Lee.
  - ORCIDs allow to “follow” scholars after name changes.
  - ORCIDs allow to navigate around different spellings of names (e.g., due to diacritical signs) or inconsistencies resulting from abbreviations of given names (e.g., J. Mitchell vs. J.S.B. Mitchell).
- Cons and problems of ORCIDs:
  - It requires an administrative effort to link one’s prior work to one’s ORCID.
  - Currently, orcid.org does not harvest data automatically.
  - Data protection regulations require that scholars can control at any time what information is linked to their ORCID and which portion of that information is publicly available.

1. **Scientific Literature and Scientific Presentations**
   - Scientific Literature
   - Literature Search
   - Bibliographic Metrics
   - Discussion of the Current Scientific Publishing Scheme
     - Peer Reviewing
     - Drastic Increase in Number of Publications
     - Open Access
     - Publish or Perish
     - Predatory Publishing
   - Guidelines for Good Oral Presentations
   - Guidelines for Good Written Presentations
   - Ethical Issues

- The refereeing process involves the subjective opinion of individuals, and hence, of course, it cannot be completely objective. Therefore, one might have “bad luck” with incompetent or uninterested referees. On the other hand, a carefully written referee report can improve the quality of a manuscript significantly. If a referee is not an expert in the field of the paper which (s)he was asked to referee, (s)he should decline! However, every scholar should feel obliged to invest serious effort into the refereeing process since the entire community relies on this peer-review process.

- The refereeing process involves the subjective opinion of individuals, and hence, of course, it cannot be completely objective. Therefore, one might have “bad luck” with incompetent or uninterested referees. On the other hand, a carefully written referee report can improve the quality of a manuscript significantly. If a referee is not an expert in the field of the paper which (s)he was asked to referee, (s)he should decline! However, every scholar should feel obliged to invest serious effort into the refereeing process since the entire community relies on this peer-review process.
- See “We are sorry to inform you . . .” by Simone Santini, IEEE Computer, Dec. 2005, pp. 126–128, for a hilarious parody of how several great innovations in CS could easily have been rejected by ignorant reviewers. (The text on the next slide was extracted from this splendid paper.)

UNIV. SALZBURG
COMPUTERWISSENSCHAFTEN

- Ignorant review of "On Computable Numbers, with an Application to the Entscheidungs Problem" by Alan Turing:

  This is a bizarre paper. It begins by defining a computing device absolutely unlike anything I have seen, then proceeds to show — I haven't quite followed the needlessly complicated formalism — that there are numbers that it can't compute. As I see it, there are two alternatives that apply to any machine that will ever be built: Either these numbers are too big to be represented in the machine, in which case the conclusion is obvious, or they are not; in that case, a machine that can't compute them is simply broken!
  Any tabulating machine worth its rent can compute all the values in the range it represents, and any number computable by a function — that is, by applying the four operations a number of times — can be computed by any modern tabulating machine since these machines — unlike the one proposed here with its bizarre mechanism — have the four operations hardwired. It seems that the "improvement" proposed by Turing is not an improvement over current technology at all, and I strongly suspect the machine is too simple to be of any use.
  If the article is accepted, Turing should remember that the language of this journal is English and change the title accordingly.

UNIV. SALZBURG
COMPUTERWISSENSCHAFTEN

Data and Facts on Scientific Publishing

- Researchers are faced with an enormous number of publications: ISI Thomson's Science Citation Index lists about 1 000 journals that are classified as CS or math journals.
- Even if only ten journals were relevant for a researcher, (s)he would have to read, understand and remember about 2 500 journal pages per year, i.e., more than ten pages per work day!

Data and Facts on Scientific Publishing

- Researchers are faced with an enormous number of publications: ISI Thomson's Science Citation Index lists about 1 000 journals that are classified as CS or math journals.
- Even if only ten journals were relevant for a researcher, (s)he would have to read, understand and remember about 2 500 journal pages per year, i.e., more than ten pages per work day!
- Over all fields of science we have more than three million paper submissions per year, handled by 125 000 editors and 350 000 editorial board members.
- About 50% of the submissions get rejected and thus, one and a half million publications are produced per year.
- About 350 years of older issues are scanned and processed per year, resulting in about 40 million publications that are available digitally.

UNIV. SALZBURG
COMPUTERWISSENSCHAFTEN

Data and Facts on Scientific Publishing

- Researchers are faced with an enormous number of publications: ISI Thomson's Science Citation Index lists about 1 000 journals that are classified as CS or math journals.
- Even if only ten journals were relevant for a researcher, (s)he would have to read, understand and remember about 2 500 journal pages per year, i.e., more than ten pages per work day!
- Over all fields of science we have more than three million paper submissions per year, handled by 125 000 editors and 350 000 editorial board members.
- About 50% of the submissions get rejected and thus, one and a half million publications are produced per year.
- About 350 years of older issues are scanned and processed per year, resulting in about 40 million publications that are available digitally.
- About 500 new journals are launched per year.

UNIV. SALZBURG
COMPUTERWISSENSCHAFTEN

Data and Facts on Scientific Publishing

- Researchers are faced with an enormous number of publications: ISI Thomson's Science Citation Index lists about 1 000 journals that are classified as CS or math journals.
- Even if only ten journals were relevant for a researcher, (s)he would have to read, understand and remember about 2 500 journal pages per year, i.e., more than ten pages per work day!
- Over all fields of science we have more than three million paper submissions per year, handled by 125 000 editors and 350 000 editorial board members.
- About 50% of the submissions get rejected and thus, one and a half million publications are produced per year.
- About 350 years of older issues are scanned and processed per year, resulting in about 40 million publications that are available digitally.
- About 500 new journals are launched per year.
- Quote provided by K. Eve, Elsevier Ltd., which was taken from *Neues Medicinisches Wochenblatt für Ärzte, Wundärzte, Apotheker, und Freunde der Naturwissenschaft*, as published in 1789:

  "This is truly the decade of the journal and one should seek to limit their number rather than to increase them, since there can be too many periodicals."

Open Access Publishing

- In recent years several funding agencies (like the Austrian FWF and the ERC) as well as research institutions have adopted *open-access policies* which basically require their scientists to publish (journal) papers in a way that ensures unlimited free access to the publications for everyone.

Open Access Publishing

- In recent years several funding agencies (like the Austrian FWF and the ERC) as well as research institutions have adopted *open-access policies* which basically require their scientists to publish (journal) papers in a way that ensures unlimited free access to the publications for everyone.
- This is a drastic change from traditional schemes employed by commercial publishers, where one would have to either purchase a monograph, subscribe to a journal, or pay a (somestimes hefty) per-paper fee to the publisher to be granted access to the publication.

Open Access Publishing

- In recent years several funding agencies (like the Austrian FWF and the ERC) as well as research institutions have adopted *open-access policies* which basically require their scientists to publish (journal) papers in a way that ensures unlimited free access to the publications for everyone.
- This is a drastic change from traditional schemes employed by commercial publishers, where one would have to either purchase a monograph, subscribe to a journal, or pay a (somestimes hefty) per-paper fee to the publisher to be granted access to the publication.
- Arguments for OA publishing:
  - Scholars can read and build on the findings of other scholars without restriction. In particular, access to prior work is not hampered by budgetary concerns.
  - Basic research often is financed by public funds. OA allows taxpayers to see the results of their investment!
  - Scholar, teachers and students have access to the latest top-notch research findings throughout the world.

Open Access Publishing: Creative Commons Licenses

- Several versions of Creative Commons licenses are used for regulating access and re-use of an OA publication:
  - **CC-BY:** It is allowed to copy, re-distribute, modify and build upon the publication (e.g., in new publications), even for commercial purposes.

Open Access Publishing: Creative Commons Licenses

- Several versions of Creative Commons licenses are used for regulating access and re-use of an OA publication:

  CC-BY: It is allowed to copy, re-distribute, modify and build upon the publication (e.g., in new publications), even for commercial purposes.

  CC-BY-NC: Same as CC-BY, except that commercial re-use is not allowed.

Open Access Publishing: Creative Commons Licenses

- Several versions of Creative Commons licenses are used for regulating access and re-use of an OA publication:

CC-BY: It is allowed to copy, re-distribute, modify and build upon the publication (e.g., in new publications), even for commercial purposes.

CC-BY-NC: Same as CC-BY, except that commercial re-use is not allowed.

CC-BY-NC-ND: Copying and re-distribution is allowed, but no derivatives and no commercial re-use.

Open Access Publishing: Creative Commons Licenses

- Several versions of Creative Commons licenses are used for regulating access and re-use of an OA publication:

  CC-BY: It is allowed to copy, re-distribute, modify and build upon the publication (e.g., in new publications), even for commercial purposes.

  CC-BY-NC: Same as CC-BY, except that commercial re-use is not allowed.

  CC-BY-NC-ND: Copying and re-distribution is allowed, but no derivatives and no commercial re-use.

  In any case, one must give appropriate credit, provide a link to the license, and (if applicable) indicate whether changes were made.

Open Access Publishing: Creative Commons Licenses

- Several versions of Creative Commons licenses are used for regulating access and re-use of an OA publication:
  - **CC-BY:** It is allowed to copy, re-distribute, modify and build upon the publication (e.g., in new publications), even for commercial purposes.
  - **CC-BY-NC:** Same as CC-BY, except that commercial re-use is not allowed.
  - **CC-BY-NC-ND:** Copying and re-distribution is allowed, but no derivatives and no commercial re-use.

  In any case, one must give appropriate credit, provide a link to the license, and (if applicable) indicate whether changes were made.
- Open access does not come for free, though: Publishing does generate costs!
- Commercial publishers offset the loss of income (due to reduced subscriptions or per-paper fees) by imposing "article processing charges" (APCs) onto the authors of an open-access paper. (Typical charges hover around 2 000 €.)

UNIV. SALZBURG
COMPUTERWISSENSCHAFTEN

Open Access Publishing: Creative Commons Licenses

- Several versions of Creative Commons licenses are used for regulating access and re-use of an OA publication:

  CC-BY: It is allowed to copy, re-distribute, modify and build upon the publication (e.g., in new publications), even for commercial purposes.

  CC-BY-NC: Same as CC-BY, except that commercial re-use is not allowed.

  CC-BY-NC-ND: Copying and re-distribution is allowed, but no derivatives and no commercial re-use.

  In any case, one must give appropriate credit, provide a link to the license, and (if applicable) indicate whether changes were made.
- Open access does not come for free, though: Publishing does generate costs!
- Commercial publishers offset the loss of income (due to reduced subscriptions or per-paper fees) by imposing "article processing charges" (APCs) onto the authors of an open-access paper. (Typical charges hover around 2 000 €.)
- Funding agencies often cover APCs. However, recently FWF and several other agencies imposed caps on the maximum APC that they agree to refund.

UNIV. SALZBURG
COMPUTERWISSENSCHAFTEN

Publish or Perish

- The phrase “publish or perish” is frequently used for describing the pressure put on scholars to publish their work frequently and regularly.

Publish or Perish

- The phrase “publish or perish” is frequently used for describing the pressure put on scholars to publish their work frequently and regularly.
- Advantages:
  - Simple means to “motivate” scholars.
  - Ensures honesty and accuracy.
  - Assures accountability of scholars.
  - Establishes reputation (both of the scholar and of the institution).

UNIV. SALZBURG
COMPUTERWISSENSCHAFTEN

Publish or Perish

- The phrase “publish or perish” is frequently used for describing the pressure put on scholars to publish their work frequently and regularly.
- Advantages:
  - Simple means to “motivate” scholars.
  - Ensures honesty and accuracy.
  - Assures accountability of scholars.
  - Establishes reputation (both of the scholar and of the institution).
- Disadvantages and problems:
  - “Salami slicing”, “approximation of the least publishable unit”.
  - Multiplication of authorship.
  - Citation cartels and tribalism.
  - Publication bias towards positive results.
  - Replication studies become more difficult to be published.
  - Idea development is inhibited.
  - Enormous load put on peer-review system.

Publish or Perish

- The phrase “publish or perish” is frequently used for describing the pressure put on scholars to publish their work frequently and regularly.
- Advantages:
  - Simple means to “motivate” scholars.
  - Ensures honesty and accuracy.
  - Assures accountability of scholars.
  - Establishes reputation (both of the scholar and of the institution).
- Disadvantages and problems:
  - “Salami slicing”, “approximation of the least publishable unit”.
  - Multiplication of authorship.
  - Citation cartels and tribalism.
  - Publication bias towards positive results.
  - Replication studies become more difficult to be published.
  - Idea development is inhibited.
  - Enormous load put on peer-review system.
- In any case, getting a manuscript published has become more and more difficult, due in part to a substantial increase in the number of scholars worldwide.

UNIV. SALZBURG
COMPUTERWISSENSCHAFTEN

Purely Profit-Oriented Versus Scholarly Publishing

- Unfortunately, the main purpose of a few dubious conferences seems to be to form a cash cow for the organizers and some travel companies/hotels. Typically, such events are organized at spots of high touristic appeal, and fairly high registration fees and/or room rates for accommodation are charged, while the refereeing is carried out rather negligently or not at all.
- That is, these organizations try to exploit the pressure of “publish or perish”, which forms a particularly severe problem for young and unexperienced scholars.

Purely Profit-Oriented Versus Scholarly Publishing

- Unfortunately, the main purpose of a few dubious conferences seems to be to form a cash cow for the organizers and some travel companies/hotels. Typically, such events are organized at spots of high touristic appeal, and fairly high registration fees and/or room rates for accommodation are charged, while the refereeing is carried out rather negligently or not at all.
- That is, these organizations try to exploit the pressure of “publish or perish”, which forms a particularly severe problem for young and unexperienced scholars.
- Received from someone at XYZ in mid February of 2015 and on 26-Feb-2015:

  Dear Professor Held,
  We are organizing our conferences again in Vienna, Austria, in your beautiful country in March 15-17, 2015 (Sunday 15, Monday 16, Tuesday 17) and we would like to invite you to come as Invited Speaker from the University of Salzburg in our Conference to present an Invited Paper.
  So, select one of our conferences in Vienna via http://www.xyz.org and upload your invited paper until February 28 (Maximum 10 pages. Format see the web page of the conference).

Purely Profit-Oriented Versus Scholarly Publishing

- Unfortunately, the main purpose of a few dubious conferences seems to be to form a cash cow for the organizers and some travel companies/hotels. Typically, such events are organized at spots of high touristic appeal, and fairly high registration fees and/or room rates for accommodation are charged, while the refereeing is carried out rather negligently or not at all.
- That is, these organizations try to exploit the pressure of "publish or perish", which forms a particularly severe problem for young and unexperienced scholars.
- Received from someone at XYZ in mid February of 2015 and on 26-Feb-2015:

  > *Dear Professor Held,*
  > *We are organizing our conferences again in Vienna, Austria, in your beautiful country in March 15-17, 2015 (Sunday 15, Monday 16, Tuesday 17) and we would like to invite you to come as Invited Speaker from the University of Salzburg in our Conference to present an Invited Paper.*
  > *So, select one of our conferences in Vienna via http://www.xyz.org and upload your invited paper until February 28 (Maximum 10 pages. Format see the web page of the conference).*

- Does XYZ really expect anybody to throw together a 10-page paper within a few days??

Purely Profit-Oriented Versus Scholarly Publishing

- Similarly, the sole purpose of dozens of newly established open-access journals seems to be to make profit on the basis of APCs of the author-pays model.
- E.g, the OMICS Group claims to publish 700+ open-access peer-reviewed journals and organize 3 000+ conference-like events per year.

UNIV. SALZBURG
COMPUTERWISSENSCHAFTEN

Purely Profit-Oriented Versus Scholarly Publishing

- Similarly, the sole purpose of dozens of newly established open-access journals seems to be to make profit on the basis of APCs of the author-pays model.
- E.g, the OMICS Group claims to publish 700+ open-access peer-reviewed journals and organize 3 000+ conference-like events per year.
- OMICS is widely regarded as predatory. In August 2016, OMICS became the first academic publisher to be sued by the U.S. Federal Trade Commission (FTC), due to alleged deceptive practices.
- OMICS responded by multy-billion dollar lawsuits for defamation.

Purely Profit-Oriented Versus Scholarly Publishing

- Similarly, the sole purpose of dozens of newly established open-access journals seems to be to make profit on the basis of APCs of the author-pays model.
- E.g, the OMICS Group claims to publish 700+ open-access peer-reviewed journals and organize 3 000+ conference-like events per year.
- OMICS is widely regarded as predatory. In August 2016, OMICS became the first academic publisher to be sued by the U.S. Federal Trade Commission (FTC), due to alleged deceptive practices.
- OMICS responded by multy-billion dollar lawsuits for defamation.
- See an editorial on "Predatory Scholarly Publishing" by M.Y. Vardi in Comm. ACM 55(7), July 2012.
- See a report published in Science 342(6154):60–65, Oct 2013, on a sting operation during which an author sent a spoof paper to many open-access journals — and got acceptance letters and hefty invoices from most of them!

UNIV. SALZBURG
COMPUTERWISSENSCHAFTEN

Purely Profit-Oriented Versus Scholarly Publishing

- Similarly, the sole purpose of dozens of newly established open-access journals seems to be to make profit on the basis of APCs of the author-pays model.
- E.g, the OMICS Group claims to publish 700+ open-access peer-reviewed journals and organize 3 000+ conference-like events per year.
- OMICS is widely regarded as predatory. In August 2016, OMICS became the first academic publisher to be sued by the U.S. Federal Trade Commission (FTC), due to alleged deceptive practices.
- OMICS responded by multy-billion dollar lawsuits for defamation.
- See an editorial on "Predatory Scholarly Publishing" by M.Y. Vardi in Comm. ACM 55(7), July 2012.
- See a report published in Science 342(6154):60–65, Oct 2013, on a sting operation during which an author sent a spoof paper to many open-access journals — and got acceptance letters and hefty invoices from most of them!
- See also "success" stories about the use of SCIgen — The Automatic CS Paper Generator.

UNIV. SALZBURG
COMPUTERWISSENSCHAFTEN

Purely Profit-Oriented Versus Scholarly Publishing

- Similarly, the sole purpose of dozens of newly established open-access journals seems to be to make profit on the basis of APCs of the author-pays model.
- E.g, the OMICS Group claims to publish 700+ open-access peer-reviewed journals and organize 3 000+ conference-like events per year.
- OMICS is widely regarded as predatory. In August 2016, OMICS became the first academic publisher to be sued by the U.S. Federal Trade Commission (FTC), due to alleged deceptive practices.
- OMICS responded by multy-billion dollar lawsuits for defamation.
- See an editorial on "Predatory Scholarly Publishing" by M.Y. Vardi in Comm. ACM 55(7), July 2012.
- See a report published in Science 342(6154):60–65, Oct 2013, on a sting operation during which an author sent a spoof paper to many open-access journals — and got acceptance letters and hefty invoices from most of them!
- See also "success" stories about the use of SCIgen — The Automatic CS Paper Generator.
- Predatory publishing is not entirely new, though: See Werner Purgathofer's VIDEA'95 Story.

Purely Profit-Oriented Versus Scholarly Publishing

- Similarly, the sole purpose of dozens of newly established open-access journals seems to be to make profit on the basis of APCs of the author-pays model.
- E.g, the OMICS Group claims to publish 700+ open-access peer-reviewed journals and organize 3 000+ conference-like events per year.
- OMICS is widely regarded as predatory. In August 2016, OMICS became the first academic publisher to be sued by the U.S. Federal Trade Commission (FTC), due to alleged deceptive practices.
- OMICS responded by multy-billion dollar lawsuits for defamation.
- See an editorial on "Predatory Scholarly Publishing" by M.Y. Vardi in Comm. ACM 55(7), July 2012.
- See a report published in Science 342(6154):60–65, Oct 2013, on a sting operation during which an author sent a spoof paper to many open-access journals — and got acceptance letters and hefty invoices from most of them!
- See also "success" stories about the use of SCIgen — The Automatic CS Paper Generator.
- Predatory publishing is not entirely new, though: See Werner Purgathofer's VIDEA'95 Story.
- Check "Beall's List" Scholarly Open Access for a blacklisting of dubious conference organizers and author-pays vanity journals, and JournalGuide for a white list. (Jeffrey Beall's work is not entirely undisputed, though!)

UNIV. SALZBURG COMPUTERWISSENSCHAFTEN

1 Scientific Literature and Scientific Presentations

UNIV. SALZBURG
COMPUTERWISSENSCHAFTEN

Oral Presentations

Before planning an oral presentation the type of audience needs to be assessed and the general setting of the presentation has to be clarified:

- Audience: Scholars from your own discipline, scholars from related disciplines, students, politicians, . . .

UNIV. SALZBURG
COMPUTERWISSENSCHAFTEN

Oral Presentations

Before planning an oral presentation the type of audience needs to be assessed and the general setting of the presentation has to be clarified:

- Audience: Scholars from your own discipline, scholars from related disciplines, students, politicians, . . .
- Available time-slot:
  - The typical time for a conference presentation is 15–25 minutes plus 5 minutes of discussion.
  - A presentation given during an MSc final exam (here at Salzburg) is supposed to last for 15 minutes, while a presentation at a doctoral "defensio" may last about 30 minutes.

Oral Presentations

Before planning an oral presentation the type of audience needs to be assessed and the general setting of the presentation has to be clarified:

- Audience: Scholars from your own discipline, scholars from related disciplines, students, politicians, . . .
- Available time-slot:
  - The typical time for a conference presentation is 15–25 minutes plus 5 minutes of discussion.
  - A presentation given during an MSc final exam (here at Salzburg) is supposed to last for 15 minutes, while a presentation at a doctoral "defensio" may last about 30 minutes.
- Availability of technical aids: video beamer, overhead projector, personal computer, Internet connection, flip-chart, blackboard, slide projector, VCR and TV set, . . .

Before planning an oral presentation the type of audience needs to be assessed and the general setting of the presentation has to be clarified:

- Audience: Scholars from your own discipline, scholars from related disciplines, students, politicians, . . .
- Available time-slot:
  - The typical time for a conference presentation is 15–25 minutes plus 5 minutes of discussion.
  - A presentation given during an MSc final exam (here at Salzburg) is supposed to last for 15 minutes, while a presentation at a doctoral “defensio” may last about 30 minutes.
- Availability of technical aids: video beamer, overhead projector, personal computer, Internet connection, flip-chart, blackboard, slide projector, VCR and TV set, . . .
- Light conditions and structure of the lecture hall.

Oral Presentations: What is the Goal?

- The first step in planning an oral presentation is to identify the goal you want to pursue with this presentation. In this context it is not sufficient that one is aware of the subjects which should be covered by the talk.

Oral Presentations: What is the Goal?

- The first step in planning an oral presentation is to identify the goal you want to pursue with this presentation. In this context it is not sufficient that one is aware of the subjects which should be covered by the talk.

Main questions to be answered prior to preparing your presentation

- What can you expect the audience to know?
- What should the audience know/understand/... after listening to your presentation?
- Which activity should the audience be able to perform after listening?

Oral Presentations: What is the Goal?

- The first step in planning an oral presentation is to identify the goal you want to pursue with this presentation. In this context it is not sufficient that one is aware of the subjects which should be covered by the talk.

Main questions to be answered prior to preparing your presentation

- What can you expect the audience to know?
- What should the audience know/understand/... after listening to your presentation?
- Which activity should the audience be able to perform after listening?

- If the goal is communicated properly then a goal-driven approach delivers automatically an intrinsic motivation for listening to your presentation!

Oral Presentations: Main Guidelines

1. Scientific content:
   - You should only give an oral presentation if you have something interesting to say.
   - No chance to give a decent talk if you do not know the stuff you are supposed to talk about!

UNIV. SALZBURG
COMPUTERWISSENSCHAFTEN

Oral Presentations: Main Guidelines

1. Scientific content:
   - You should only give an oral presentation if you have something interesting to say.
   - No chance to give a decent talk if you do not know the stuff you are supposed to talk about!
2. Structure: Even the most brilliant scientific result cannot be communicated without structuring the information.

UNIV. SALZBURG
COMPUTERWISSENSCHAFTEN

Oral Presentations: Main Guidelines

1. Scientific content:
   - You should only give an oral presentation if you have something interesting to say.
   - No chance to give a decent talk if you do not know the stuff you are supposed to talk about!
2. Structure: Even the most brilliant scientific result cannot be communicated without structuring the information.
3. Multi-media support: Visual presentation media should help to transport the content of your talk but must not replace it.

Oral Presentations: Main Guidelines

1. Scientific content:
   - You should only give an oral presentation if you have something interesting to say.
   - No chance to give a decent talk if you do not know the stuff you are supposed to talk about!
2. Structure: Even the most brilliant scientific result cannot be communicated without structuring the information.
3. Multi-media support: Visual presentation media should help to transport the content of your talk but must not replace it.
4. Presentation: Keep in mind that also a purely academic talk is a communication and consequently heavily influenced by the way it is communicated, including emotions!

UNIV. SALZBURG
COMPUTERWISSENSCHAFTEN

Oral Presentations: Structure

- Welcome: Who am I, where do I come from, . . .
- Introduction: Wwhat am I going to talk about;
- Structure/Contents: What is the outline of the talk, time plan;
- Main part:
  - Problem statement;
  - Problem solution;
  - Correctness, implementation, experiments;
- Conclusion;
- Acknowledgments.

Pictorial information and textual information

It is very important to realize that presentations which use *pictorial information and textual information* are significantly more effective than presentations which use only textual information.

Pictorial information and textual information

It is very important to realize that presentations which use *pictorial information and textual information* are significantly more effective than presentations which use only textual information.

- Use charts and/or graphs instead of tables.

Pictorial information and textual information

It is very important to realize that presentations which use *pictorial information and textual information* are significantly more effective than presentations which use only textual information.

- Use charts and/or graphs instead of tables.
- Use color. But use color consistently!

Oral Presentations: Visual Aids

Pictorial information and textual information

It is very important to realize that presentations which use *pictorial information and textual information* are significantly more effective than presentations which use only textual information.

- Use charts and/or graphs instead of tables.
- Use color. But use color consistently!
- Be careful when using scanned images! (And make sure to include references when using somebody else's material.)

Pictorial information and textual information

It is very important to realize that presentations which use *pictorial information and textual information* are significantly more effective than presentations which use only textual information.

- Use charts and/or graphs instead of tables.
- Use color. But use color consistently!
- Be careful when using scanned images! (And make sure to include references when using somebody else's material.)
- Animated graphics are nice but they may distract the attention of your audience from the content of your talk.

Oral Presentations: Using Graphics

Explain your graphics!

Graphics should not be considered to be self-explaining — your contribution is important!

Oral Presentations: Using Graphics

Explain your graphics!

Graphics should not be considered to be self-explaining — your contribution is important!

- Announce the graphics;
- Display the graphics;
- Explain the elements and key aspects of the graphics:
- Interpretation and conclusion.

Explain your graphics!

Graphics should not be considered to be self-explaining — your contribution is important!

- Announce the graphics;
- Display the graphics;
- Explain the elements and key aspects of the graphics:
- Interpretation and conclusion.

- Graphics in presentations should be simple and clear:
  - Put all the stuff into your figure or image that you want to talk about in your presentation.
  - Omit everything else!

Explain your graphics!

Graphics should not be considered to be self-explaining — your contribution is important!

- Announce the graphics;
- Display the graphics;
- Explain the elements and key aspects of the graphics:
- Interpretation and conclusion.

- Graphics in presentations should be simple and clear:
  - Put all the stuff into your figure or image that you want to talk about in your presentation.
  - Omit everything else!
- Whatever can be seen has to be readable and understandable for the audience!
- If some entity in a graphics is too small or too difficult to be understood by the audience, or if you don't plan to explain it, then it is best to omit it completely!

Transparencies:

Pro: spontaneous;
Con: old fashioned, boring if badly prepared, wide availability increasingly uncertain.

Oral Presentations: Pros and Cons of Different Visual Media

Transparencies:

Pro: spontaneous;

Con: old fashioned, boring if badly prepared, wide availability increasingly uncertain.

Flip-chart/Blackboard/Whiteboard:

Pro: interaction with audience, spontaneous;

Con: preparation is hardly possible, limited graphics facility. (Do not underestimate the difficulty of drawing neat figures on the blackboard!)

Transparencies:

Pro: spontaneous;
Con: old fashioned, boring if badly prepared, wide availability increasingly uncertain.

Flip-chart/Blackboard/Whiteboard:

Pro: interaction with audience, spontaneous;
Con: preparation is hardly possible, limited graphics facility. (Do not underestimate the difficulty of drawing neat figures on the blackboard!)

Video Projector:

Pro: perfect preparation, perfect graphics facilities;
Con: technical equipment may fail, presentation may give a "sterile" feeling, often presentations tend to be overloaded, careful a-priori planning of the schedule is needed.

- Too much information on one slide.

Oral Presentations: Mortal Sins When Producing Slides

- Too much information on one slide.
- Font size is too small.
- Lines are too thin.

UNIV. SALZBURG
COMPUTERWISSENSCHAFTEN

- Too much information on one slide.
- Font size is too small.
- Lines are too thin.
- Only copied from text (paper, thesis, . . .).

Oral Presentations: Mortal Sins When Producing Slides

- Too much information on one slide.
- Font size is too small.
- Lines are too thin.
- Only copied from text (paper, thesis, . . .).
- No graphics.
- No color.

Oral Presentations: Mortal Sins of the Speaker

- Covers the projection with her/his body.

Oral Presentations: Mortal Sins of the Speaker

- Covers the projection with her/his body.
- Shows too many slides or changes slides too fast — more than one slide per minute on average is definitely too much.

Oral Presentations: Mortal Sins of the Speaker

- Covers the projection with her/his body.
- Shows too many slides or changes slides too fast — more than one slide per minute on average is definitely too much.
- Does not find a specific slide for a while.

Oral Presentations: Mortal Sins of the Speaker

- Covers the projection with her/his body.
- Shows too many slides or changes slides too fast — more than one slide per minute on average is definitely too much.
- Does not find a specific slide for a while.
- Points towards the projection without making clear what exactly is to be pointed out.

Oral Presentations: Mortal Sins of the Speaker

- Covers the projection with her/his body.
- Shows too many slides or changes slides too fast — more than one slide per minute on average is definitely too much.
- Does not find a specific slide for a while.
- Points towards the projection without making clear what exactly is to be pointed out.
- Does not look at the audience — eye-contact is important!

Oral Presentations: Mortal Sins of the Speaker

- Covers the projection with her/his body.
- Shows too many slides or changes slides too fast — more than one slide per minute on average is definitely too much.
- Does not find a specific slide for a while.
- Points towards the projection without making clear what exactly is to be pointed out.
- Does not look at the audience — eye-contact is important!
- Speaks towards the projector instead of towards the audience.
- Speaks towards the wall, with the back towards the audience.

Oral Presentations: Mortal Sins of the Speaker

- Covers the projection with her/his body.
- Shows too many slides or changes slides too fast — more than one slide per minute on average is definitely too much.
- Does not find a specific slide for a while.
- Points towards the projection without making clear what exactly is to be pointed out.
- Does not look at the audience — eye-contact is important!
- Speaks towards the projector instead of towards the audience.
- Speaks towards the wall, with the back towards the audience.
- Speaks with low, monotonous voice.
- Speaks too fast and without pauses.

UNIV. SALZBURG
COMPUTERWISSENSCHAFTEN

Oral Presentations: Mortal Sins of the Speaker

- Covers the projection with her/his body.
- Shows too many slides or changes slides too fast — more than one slide per minute on average is definitely too much.
- Does not find a specific slide for a while.
- Points towards the projection without making clear what exactly is to be pointed out.
- Does not look at the audience — eye-contact is important!
- Speaks towards the projector instead of towards the audience.
- Speaks towards the wall, with the back towards the audience.
- Speaks with low, monotonous voice.
- Speaks too fast and without pauses.
- Uses long, complicated sentence constructions: Do not read but speak without notes!!

Oral Presentations: Mortal Sins of the Speaker

- Covers the projection with her/his body.
- Shows too many slides or changes slides too fast — more than one slide per minute on average is definitely too much.
- Does not find a specific slide for a while.
- Points towards the projection without making clear what exactly is to be pointed out.
- Does not look at the audience — eye-contact is important!
- Speaks towards the projector instead of towards the audience.
- Speaks towards the wall, with the back towards the audience.
- Speaks with low, monotonous voice.
- Speaks too fast and without pauses.
- Uses long, complicated sentence constructions: Do not read but speak without notes!!
- Walks around without any purpose.
- Stands at the same position during the entire talk.
- Hands are moving without connection to the content of the talk.

UNIV. SALZBURG
COMPUTERWISSENSCHAFTEN

1 Scientific Literature and Scientific Presentations

UNIV. SALZBURG
COMPUTERWISSENSCHAFTEN

Written Presentations

The most important issue with respect to written presentations is to produce a *well-structured* manuscript. (This is achieved by pursuing a top-down approach.) The reader should be able to find as soon as possible the parts of the manuscript which are of interest to her/him.

Written Presentations

The most important issue with respect to written presentations is to produce a *well-structured* manuscript. (This is achieved by pursuing a top-down approach.) The reader should be able to find as soon as possible the parts of the manuscript which are of interest to her/him.

Typically a scientific manuscript is structured as follows:

- Title Block,
- Abstract and Keywords,
- Main text,
- Bibliography.

UNIV. SALZBURG
COMPUTERWISSENSCHAFTEN

Written Presentations: Title Block

- The title block provides the first information on a publication and its authors:
  - Title,
  - Author(s),
  - Address(es) of author(s), i.e., postal address, e-mail address, URL.

- The title block provides the first information on a publication and its authors:
  - Title,
  - Author(s),
  - Address(es) of author(s), i.e., postal address, e-mail address, URL.
- The formulation of the title is a crucial issue:
  - On one hand, the reader should be able to decide on the basis of the title whether the publication is of any interest to her/him, on the other hand the title should be short and concise.
  - The title should neither be too general and nor too specific.
  - Abbreviations and non-common jargon or non-common technical terms are to be avoided.

Written Presentations: Title Block

- The title block provides the first information on a publication and its authors:
  - Title,
  - Author(s),
  - Address(es) of author(s), i.e., postal address, e-mail address, URL.
- The formulation of the title is a crucial issue:
  - On one hand, the reader should be able to decide on the basis of the title whether the publication is of any interest to her/him, on the other hand the title should be short and concise.
  - The title should neither be too general and nor too specific.
  - Abbreviations and non-common jargon or non-common technical terms are to be avoided.
- In any case, it should be clear from the title whether the publication is, e.g., an experimental study or a theoretical contribution (or both).

UNIV. SALZBURG
COMPUTERWISSENSCHAFTEN

Written Presentations: Abstract

- The abstract — typically one paragraph of 50–300 words — is a short description of the manuscript which should characterize the content of the paper as good as possible without the necessity to read the paper itself:
  - What has been done or achieved?
  - What are the main results?

Written Presentations: Abstract

- The abstract — typically one paragraph of 50–300 words — is a short description of the manuscript which should characterize the content of the paper as good as possible without the necessity to read the paper itself:
  - What has been done or achieved?
  - What are the main results?
- Note that the full paper might not be available when an abstract is read!
  - Therefore, no references should be made into the manuscript and no citations to other literature must be made.
  - Abbreviations and non-common jargon or non-common technical terms are to be avoided.

Written Presentations: Abstract

- The abstract — typically one paragraph of 50–300 words — is a short description of the manuscript which should characterize the content of the paper as good as possible without the necessity to read the paper itself:
  - What has been done or achieved?
  - What are the main results?
- Note that the full paper might not be available when an abstract is read!
  - Therefore, no references should be made into the manuscript and no citations to other literature must be made.
  - Abbreviations and non-common jargon or non-common technical terms are to be avoided.
- The abstract advertises your publication; it can and should be "sexy" in order to attract the attention of a potential reader.
- However, don't overstate your claims! In particular, the abstract may not make promises that the entire manuscript fails to deliver.

UNIV. SALZBURG
COMPUTERWISSENSCHAFTEN

- Keywords are used for indexing the manuscript and, therefore, are very important for facilitating an efficient search for the paper. Hence, the keywords should reflect the content of the paper as closely as possible and should be neither too specific nor too general.
  - Make them informative, effective and attractive.
  - Use only well-known abbreviations.
  - Simply repeating the words of the title makes no sense!

Written Presentations: Main Text

- Introduction,
- Exact formulation of the problem,
- Exact formulation of the solution,
- Correctness considerations (if applicable),
- Implementation (if applicable),
- Experimental results and discussion (if any),
- Conclusion,
- Acknowledgments.

Written Presentations: Introduction

- Similar to the abstract, the introduction is a short description of the manuscript which contains a description of the problem and of the corresponding solution.

UNIV. SALZBURG
COMPUTERWISSENSCHAFTEN

Written Presentations: Introduction

- Similar to the abstract, the introduction is a short description of the manuscript which contains a description of the problem and of the corresponding solution.
- However, there are significant differences:
  - Whoever reads the introduction could also read the entire manuscript.
  - The introduction is longer; it may occupy a significant amount of space.

UNIV. SALZBURG
COMPUTERWISSENSCHAFTEN

- Similar to the abstract, the introduction is a short description of the manuscript which contains a description of the problem and of the corresponding solution.
- However, there are significant differences:
  - Whoever reads the introduction could also read the entire manuscript.
  - The introduction is longer; it may occupy a significant amount of space.
- Problem and solution should be described in a simple and understandable way.

- Similar to the abstract, the introduction is a short description of the manuscript which contains a description of the problem and of the corresponding solution.
- However, there are significant differences:
  - Whoever reads the introduction could also read the entire manuscript.
  - The introduction is longer; it may occupy a significant amount of space.
- Problem and solution should be described in a simple and understandable way.
- The introduction may also explain the structure of the manuscript and, thus, refer to the following parts of the paper.

UNIV. SALZBURG
COMPUTERWISSENSCHAFTEN

Written Presentations: Introduction

- Similar to the abstract, the introduction is a short description of the manuscript which contains a description of the problem and of the corresponding solution.
- However, there are significant differences:
  - Whoever reads the introduction could also read the entire manuscript.
  - The introduction is longer; it may occupy a significant amount of space.
- Problem and solution should be described in a simple and understandable way.
- The introduction may also explain the structure of the manuscript and, thus, refer to the following parts of the paper.
- It is important to state what has already been known and what is really new in this manuscript.
  - What are the major results of your work?
  - Why is your work better than existing solutions? (Be fair!)
  - What are the most serious limitations? (Be honest!)

  Usually, references to existing related literature are given in the introduction.

Written Presentations: Introduction

- Similar to the abstract, the introduction is a short description of the manuscript which contains a description of the problem and of the corresponding solution.
- However, there are significant differences:
  - Whoever reads the introduction could also read the entire manuscript.
  - The introduction is longer; it may occupy a significant amount of space.
- Problem and solution should be described in a simple and understandable way.
- The introduction may also explain the structure of the manuscript and, thus, refer to the following parts of the paper.
- It is important to state what has already been known and what is really new in this manuscript.
  - What are the major results of your work?
  - Why is your work better than existing solutions? (Be fair!)
  - What are the most serious limitations? (Be honest!)

  Usually, references to existing related literature are given in the introduction.
- Distinguishing between original parts of the manuscript and already existing results is important for two reasons: “intellectual and scientific honesty” and “intellectual property protection”!

UNIV. SALZBURG
COMPUTERWISSENSCHAFTEN

- The structure described below is somewhat idealistic and is not followed by all scientific papers. Often, the “Black box” is omitted.
  - *Black box*: Parts of the manuscript for the “user”. Here, the problem and its solution are exactly described and sample applications are given. This is to give the user a timing advantage: (s)he should be able to take advantage of the content of the paper without necessarily going into all details that justify the solution of the problem.

Written Presentations: Formulation of the Problem and the Solution

- The structure described below is somewhat idealistic and is not followed by all scientific papers. Often, the “Black box” is omitted.
  - *Black box*: Parts of the manuscript for the “user”. Here, the problem and its solution are exactly described and sample applications are given. This is to give the user a timing advantage: (s)he should be able to take advantage of the content of the paper without necessarily going into all details that justify the solution of the problem.
  - *White box*: Parts of the manuscript for scholars working in the same field. Here, information is given on the basic ideas which lead to the solution and details about the solution approach (e.g., complexity, correctness), and possible corresponding implementations.

- The structure described below is somewhat idealistic and is not followed by all scientific papers. Often, the “Black box” is omitted.
  - *Black box*: Parts of the manuscript for the “user”. Here, the problem and its solution are exactly described and sample applications are given. This is to give the user a timing advantage: (s)he should be able to take advantage of the content of the paper without necessarily going into all details that justify the solution of the problem.
  - *White box*: Parts of the manuscript for scholars working in the same field. Here, information is given on the basic ideas which lead to the solution and details about the solution approach (e.g., complexity, correctness), and possible corresponding implementations.
- In any case, please note that “space” (such as the length of a paper) might be limited. Refrain from including sentences or phrases that carry no information, and try to make your text as brief as possible!

- The structure described below is somewhat idealistic and is not followed by all scientific papers. Often, the “Black box” is omitted.
  - *Black box*: Parts of the manuscript for the “user”. Here, the problem and its solution are exactly described and sample applications are given. This is to give the user a timing advantage: (s)he should be able to take advantage of the content of the paper without necessarily going into all details that justify the solution of the problem.
  - *White box*: Parts of the manuscript for scholars working in the same field. Here, information is given on the basic ideas which lead to the solution and details about the solution approach (e.g., complexity, correctness), and possible corresponding implementations.
- In any case, please note that “space” (such as the length of a paper) might be limited. Refrain from including sentences or phrases that carry no information, and try to make your text as brief as possible!
- Similarly, your BSc or MSc thesis does not necessarily get better if it is bloated. (But you might annoy your advisor . . .)

Written Presentations: Experiments and Discussion

- Describe the set-up of your experiments in such detail that a knowledgeable graduate student could repeat your experiments.
- In particular, describe the computing environment used for your experiments.
- Which data sets were tested? If the data is not publicly available then describe its characteristics.

Written Presentations: Experiments and Discussion

- Describe the set-up of your experiments in such detail that a knowledgeable graduate student could repeat your experiments.
- In particular, describe the computing environment used for your experiments.
- Which data sets were tested? If the data is not publicly available then describe its characteristics.
- Make it evident how the test results are related to your work, and discuss all possible interpretations of your results.
- Refrain from claiming generalizations that are not supported by your tests.
- If your results conflict with prior art then discuss the differences and argue succinctly why the reader should believe in your results.

Written Presentations: Conclusion

Similar to the abstract, the conclusion is a short description of the manuscript. However, there are important additional features:

- We may suppose that the rest of the paper has been read.
- Specific details and cross connections to other work are emphasized.
- The conclusion refers to the results in the manuscript and thereby may "start the discussion".

Written Presentations: Conclusion

Similar to the abstract, the conclusion is a short description of the manuscript. However, there are important additional features:

- We may suppose that the rest of the paper has been read.
- Specific details and cross connections to other work are emphasized.
- The conclusion refers to the results in the manuscript and thereby may “start the discussion”.
- Open problems are stated.
- Possible future work in the area of the manuscript is described.

Written Presentations: Referring to Prior Publications

- When referring to the work of others, i.e., to already published material, we have to add a corresponding pointer to the entry in the bibliography which provides the bibliographics data. This usually looks like

  > *"In previous work [12], it was shown that this problem requires complex algorithms to be solved."*

  or, by involving the name(s) of the author(s),

  > *"It was shown by Turing et al. [12] that this problem requires complex algorithms to be solved."*

- When referring to the work of others, i.e., to already published material, we have to add a corresponding pointer to the entry in the bibliography which provides the bibliographics data. This usually looks like

  "In previous work [12], it was shown that this problem requires complex algorithms to be solved."

  or, by involving the name(s) of the author(s),

  "It was shown by Turing et al. [12] that this problem requires complex algorithms to be solved."

- In CS (and math) direct verbatim quotations are hardly ever used.
- In contrast to other fields, it is more essential what was stated but not how exactly it was stated. If required, a verbatim quotation would read as

  Turing [12] stated in this context: "There is no linear-time algorithm for . . ."

  or

  Turing [12] stated in this context that "there is no linear-time algorithm for . . ."

UNIV. SALZBURG
COMPUTERWISSENSCHAFTEN

Written Presentations: Referring to Prior Publications

- Note that “[12]” is only one out of many possibilities how pointers to the bibliography may look like. (Actually, this is what is produced by LaTeX’s `plain` bibliography style.)
- Citations might also look like “[Turing1949b]” or similar.

Written Presentations: Referring to Prior Publications

- Note that "[12]" is only one out of many possibilities how pointers to the bibliography may look like. (Actually, this is what is produced by LaTeX's `plain` bibliography style.)
- Citations might also look like "[Turing1949b]" or similar.
- The expression "et al." is only used in case of several authors (bibtex command `and others`).

Written Presentations: Style

- The Chicago Manual of Style contains detailed rules on how to write scientific papers that are widely followed by the publishing industry.
- Note that the term “style” refers to grammar, interpunctuation, italicizing, citing, and other related topics rather than to prose style.

- The Chicago Manual of Style contains detailed rules on how to write scientific papers that are widely followed by the publishing industry.
- Note that the term “style” refers to grammar, interpunctuation, italicizing, citing, and other related topics rather than to prose style.
- Although targeted at American English, the recommendations contained in The Chicago Manual of Style are widely used when writing scientific papers, no matter which language is used.

Written Presentations: Style

- As a meta rule, keep in mind that a technical or scientific presentation is nothing but a standard write-up on a specific topic.
- Thus, technical presentations have to follow the same rules with respect to grammar, orthography and interpunctuation as any other prose!

Written Presentations: Style

- As a meta rule, keep in mind that a technical or scientific presentation is nothing but a standard write-up on a specific topic.
- Thus, technical presentations have to follow the same rules with respect to grammar, orthography and interpunctuation as any other prose!
- Failure to comply with standard rules of writing prose may result in down-grading (in case of an academic thesis) or rejection (in case of a submission to a conference or journal).
- Comment by an Elsevier editor on desk rejection: *“My rule of thumb is that if there are more than six grammatical errors in the abstract, then I don’t waste my time carefully reading the rest.”* [Thanks to K. Eve for that quote.]

Written Presentations: Style

- As a meta rule, keep in mind that a technical or scientific presentation is nothing but a standard write-up on a specific topic.
- Thus, technical presentations have to follow the same rules with respect to grammar, orthography and interpunctuation as any other prose!
- Failure to comply with standard rules of writing prose may result in down-grading (in case of an academic thesis) or rejection (in case of a submission to a conference or journal).
- Comment by an Elsevier editor on desk rejection: *"My rule of thumb is that if there are more than six grammatical errors in the abstract, then I don't waste my time carefully reading the rest."* [Thanks to K. Eve for that quote.]
- Keep your English sentences reasonably short and easy to parse: Native speakers of German tend to construct sentences that are far too complicated!
- In particular, avoid multiple claims or statements in one sentence.

Written Presentations: Style

- Use abbreviations only if they are common knowledge or if introduced by you in your work.
- Do not use colloquial abbreviations like “he’d” or “it’s”. In any case, note the difference between “it’s” and “its”!

- Use abbreviations only if they are common knowledge or if introduced by you in your work.
- Do not use colloquial abbreviations like “he’d” or “it’s”. In any case, note the difference between “it’s” and “its”!
- Always use the same language for the annotations in figures and in the running text.
- Always use the same fonts for symbols in figures and in the running text.
- Never use a font smaller than the standard font size for symbols in figures.

- Use abbreviations only if they are common knowledge or if introduced by you in your work.
- Do not use colloquial abbreviations like “he’d” or “it’s”. In any case, note the difference between “it’s” and “its”!
- Always use the same language for the annotations in figures and in the running text.
- Always use the same fonts for symbols in figures and in the running text.
- Never use a font smaller than the standard font size for symbols in figures.
- Itemized lists, figures grouped within the text, or mathematical formulae have to be treated like standard words or groups of words.

Written Presentations: Style

- Watch the interplay of mathematical terms ("symbols") and normal text:
  - Do not start a sentence with a symbol. That is, write

    "The point P is contained in ..."

    rather than

    "P is contained in ..."

    even if it is well-known that P denotes a point.

UNIV. SALZBURG
COMPUTERWISSENSCHAFTEN

Written Presentations: Style

- Watch the interplay of mathematical terms (“symbols”) and normal text:
  - Do not start a sentence with a symbol. That is, write

    “The point P is contained in ...”

    rather than

    “P is contained in ...”

    even if it is well-known that P denotes a point.
  - Try to separate prose and symbols if the same font is used. E.g., when using LaTeX do not put italicized words and math symbols in consecutive order.

Written Presentations: Style

- Watch the interplay of mathematical terms ("symbols") and normal text:
  - Do not start a sentence with a symbol. That is, write

    "The point P is contained in ..."

    rather than

    "P is contained in ..."

    even if it is well-known that P denotes a point.
  - Try to separate prose and symbols if the same font is used. E.g., when using LaTeX do not put italicized words and math symbols in consecutive order.
  - Make sure to separate symbols that do not belong to the same mathematical term by more than only an interpunctuation character. That is, write

    "Since $p \in P$ we conclude that $q \notin A$ and ..."

    rather than

    "Since $p \in P$, $q \notin A$ and ...".

UNIV. SALZBURG
COMPUTERWISSENSCHAFTEN

Written Presentations: Style

- Watch the interplay of mathematical terms ("symbols") and normal text:
  - Do not start a sentence with a symbol. That is, write

    "The point P is contained in ..."

    rather than

    "P is contained in ..."

    even if it is well-known that P denotes a point.
  - Try to separate prose and symbols if the same font is used. E.g., when using LaTeX do not put italicized words and math symbols in consecutive order.
  - Make sure to separate symbols that do not belong to the same mathematical term by more than only an interpunctuation character. That is, write

    "Since $p \in P$ we conclude that $q \notin A$ and ..."

    rather than

    "Since $p \in P$, $q \notin A$ and ...".
- Make sure to put LaTeX in math mode when mixing one-character variables and running text: That is, for the variable a, write "a" rather than "a".

UNIV. SALZBURG
COMPUTERWISSENSCHAFTEN

Written Presentations: Style

- In technical manuscripts we face two situations which need to be treated differently with respect to style: parts which cover known facts and already published literature, and parts which cover original own research. Make sure not to obfuscate this important distinction!

UNIV. SALZBURG
COMPUTERWISSENSCHAFTEN

Written Presentations: Style

- In technical manuscripts we face two situations which need to be treated differently with respect to style: parts which cover known facts and already published literature, and parts which cover original own research. Make sure not to obfuscate this important distinction!
- Personal pronoun: Never use “I” or “we” when referring to somebody else’s work! Rather, use passive voice or “one” constructs. Complicated constructions in passive voice should be avoided, though!

UNIV. SALZBURG
COMPUTERWISSENSCHAFTEN

Written Presentations: Style

- In technical manuscripts we face two situations which need to be treated differently with respect to style: parts which cover known facts and already published literature, and parts which cover original own research. Make sure not to obfuscate this important distinction!
- Personal pronoun: Never use “I” or “we” when referring to somebody else’s work! Rather, use passive voice or “one” constructs. Complicated constructions in passive voice should be avoided, though!
- In any case, avoid massive use of “I/we”. (This is particularly true for the abstract.) I/we helps to emphasize own original work.
- Tense:
  - Present tense is good for known facts. Similarly, other people’s work is usually reported in present tense.
  - Past tense is used for describing the set-up and the results of one’s own experiments.
  - Similarly, authors usually write about their own original work in past tense.

UNIV. SALZBURG
COMPUTERWISSENSCHAFTEN

- Check for missing commas and periods.
- Watch for missing left or right parentheses in parenthetical remarks.

UNIV. SALZBURG
COMPUTERWISSENSCHAFTEN

Written Presentations: Grammar and Orthography

- Check for missing commas and periods.
- Watch for missing left or right parentheses in parenthetical remarks.
- Check your spelling.
- When using English, decide whether to use British or American English, and stick to your decision.

Written Presentations: Grammar and Orthography

- Check for missing commas and periods.
- Watch for missing left or right parentheses in parenthetical remarks.
- Check your spelling.
- When using English, decide whether to use British or American English, and stick to your decision.
- When using English words within German, decide on the interplay of German and English words, and stick to your decision.

UNIV. SALZBURG
COMPUTERWISSENSCHAFTEN

1 Scientific Literature and Scientific Presentations

UNIV. SALZBURG
COMPUTERWISSENSCHAFTEN

Ethical Issues: Plagiarism

- According to the Random House Compact Unabridged Dictionary [1995], *Plagiarism is the “use or close imitation of the language and thoughts of another author and the representation of them as one’s own original work.”*

UNIV. SALZBURG
COMPUTERWISSENSCHAFTEN

Ethical Issues: Plagiarism

- According to the Random House Compact Unabridged Dictionary [1995], *Plagiarism is the "use or close imitation of the language and thoughts of another author and the representation of them as one's own original work."*
- Typically, works of others are plagiarized (intentionally) by failing to include quotations or state proper citations.
- Plagiarism may (but need not) concur with a copyright infringement.
- The tremendous growth of online resources has aggravated the plagiarism problem.

Ethical Issues: Plagiarism

- According to the Random House Compact Unabridged Dictionary [1995], *Plagiarism is the "use or close imitation of the language and thoughts of another author and the representation of them as one's own original work."*
- Typically, works of others are plagiarized (intentionally) by failing to include quotations or state proper citations.
- Plagiarism may (but need not) concur with a copyright infringement.
- The tremendous growth of online resources has aggravated the plagiarism problem.
- Plagiarism is — or, at least, should be regarded as — a serious offense in academia.
- Many universities have strict codes of ethic that ban plagiarism and allow for stiff sanctions.

Ethical Issues: Plagiarism

- According to the Random House Compact Unabridged Dictionary [1995], *Plagiarism is the "use or close imitation of the language and thoughts of another author and the representation of them as one's own original work."*
- Typically, works of others are plagiarized (intentionally) by failing to include quotations or state proper citations.
- Plagiarism may (but need not) concur with a copyright infringement.
- The tremendous growth of online resources has aggravated the plagiarism problem.
- Plagiarism is — or, at least, should be regarded as — a serious offense in academia.
- Many universities have strict codes of ethic that ban plagiarism and allow for stiff sanctions.
- Unfortunately, Austria seems to lag behind the international trend to go after plagiarism offenses.

Ethical Issues: Data Manipulation

- *Data fabrication* means coming up with data or results without running proper experiments or tests.

Ethical Issues: Data Manipulation

- *Data fabrication* means coming up with data or results without running proper experiments or tests.
- *Data falsification* is the manipulation of data such that the outcome of tests is not appropriately represented. Data falsification includes the changing or omission of data items in order to make the data “fit better”, e.g., to some predicted scheme.

UNIV. SALZBURG
COMPUTERWISSENSCHAFTEN

Ethical Issues: Data Manipulation

- *Data fabrication* means coming up with data or results without running proper experiments or tests.
- *Data falsification* is the manipulation of data such that the outcome of tests is not appropriately represented. Data falsification includes the changing or omission of data items in order to make the data “fit better”, e.g., to some predicted scheme.
- Similar to plagiarism, either form of data manipulation is a serious scientific misconduct, and can (or should) result in a non-passing grade (in case of an academic thesis) or rejection (in case of a submission to a conference or journal).

Ethical Issues: Data Manipulation

- *Data fabrication* means coming up with data or results without running proper experiments or tests.
- *Data falsification* is the manipulation of data such that the outcome of tests is not appropriately represented. Data falsification includes the changing or omission of data items in order to make the data “fit better”, e.g., to some predicted scheme.
- Similar to plagiarism, either form of data manipulation is a serious scientific misconduct, and can (or should) result in a non-passing grade (in case of an academic thesis) or rejection (in case of a submission to a conference or journal).
- If a publication is written jointly with co-authors then you ought to make sure that you understand each and every word and claim in your publication. You shall not defer the responsibility to your co-authors!

UNIV. SALZBURG
COMPUTERWISSENSCHAFTEN

Ethical Issues: Data Manipulation

- *Data fabrication* means coming up with data or results without running proper experiments or tests.
- *Data falsification* is the manipulation of data such that the outcome of tests is not appropriately represented. Data falsification includes the changing or omission of data items in order to make the data "fit better", e.g., to some predicted scheme.
- Similar to plagiarism, either form of data manipulation is a serious scientific misconduct, and can (or should) result in a non-passing grade (in case of an academic thesis) or rejection (in case of a submission to a conference or journal).
- If a publication is written jointly with co-authors then you ought to make sure that you understand each and every word and claim in your publication. You shall not defer the responsibility to your co-authors!

- See Univ. Salzburg's Richtlinien zur Sicherung guter wissenschaftlicher Praxis.
- See also the Code of Ethics of the Association for Computing Machinery (ACM).

2 LaTeX for Scientific Text Processing

UNIV. SALZBURG
COMPUTERWISSENSCHAFTEN

2 LaTeX for Scientific Text Processing

What is TEX?

"TEX is a new typesetting system intended for creation of beautiful books – and especially for books that contain a lot of mathematics. By preparing a manuscript in TEX format, you will be telling a computer exactly how the manuscript is to be transformed into pages whose typographic quality is comparable to that of the world's finest printers."

Donald Knuth

What is TeX?

"TeX is a new typesetting system intended for creation of beautiful books – and especially for books that contain a lot of mathematics. By preparing a manuscript in TeX format, you will be telling a computer exactly how the manuscript is to be transformed into pages whose typographic quality is comparable to that of the world's finest printers."

Donald Knuth

- Donald Knuth was the winner of the 1974 ACM Turing Award.
- $\tau\varepsilon\chi\nu\eta$: (gr.) art.
- The design of TeX grew out of Knuth's frustration with the quality of galley proofs that he received for the second edition of "The Art of Computer Programming" in 1977.
- First version released in 1978, and rewritten from scratch till 1982.
- Version 3.0 released in 1989.

UNIV. SALZBURG
COMPUTERWISSENSCHAFTEN

What is TEX?

"TEX is a new typesetting system intended for creation of beautiful books – and especially for books that contain a lot of mathematics. By preparing a manuscript in TEX format, you will be telling a computer exactly how the manuscript is to be transformed into pages whose typographic quality is comparable to that of the world's finest printers."

Donald Knuth

- Donald Knuth was the winner of the 1974 ACM Turing Award.
- $\tau\varepsilon\chi\nu\eta$: (gr.) art.
- The design of TEX grew out of Knuth's frustration with the quality of galley proofs that he received for the second edition of "The Art of Computer Programming" in 1977.
- First version released in 1978, and rewritten from scratch till 1982.
- Version 3.0 released in 1989.
- The version number approaches π: Knuth demanded that the "absolutely final change (to be made after my death)" will be to change the version number to π, at which point all remaining bugs shall become features. (A similar rule holds for Knuth's METAFONT, whose version number approaches *e*.)

UNIV. SALZBURG
COMPUTERWISSENSCHAFTEN

- Professional-quality layout;
- Predefined layouts for standard text styles (article, book, letter,. . .);
- Tons of features for solving a wide array of layout problems;
- Pretty much every individual layout option can be changed and adapted to specific needs – providing that one knows how to do it;

Basics of $\TeX$

- Professional-quality layout;
- Predefined layouts for standard text styles (article, book, letter,...);
- Tons of features for solving a wide array of layout problems;
- Pretty much every individual layout option can be changed and adapted to specific needs – providing that one knows how to do it;
- Particularly good at formatting mathematical formulae;

- Professional-quality layout;
- Predefined layouts for standard text styles (article, book, letter,. . .);
- Tons of features for solving a wide array of layout problems;
- Pretty much every individual layout option can be changed and adapted to specific needs – providing that one knows how to do it;
- Particularly good at formatting mathematical formulae;
- Available for most computing platforms;
- The layout does not depend on the output device (monitor, laser printer,. . .);

Basics of TEX

- Professional-quality layout;
- Predefined layouts for standard text styles (article, book, letter,. . .);
- Tons of features for solving a wide array of layout problems;
- Pretty much every individual layout option can be changed and adapted to specific needs – providing that one knows how to do it;
- Particularly good at formatting mathematical formulae;
- Available for most computing platforms;
- The layout does not depend on the output device (monitor, laser printer,. . .);
- All the TEX source code is publicly available;
- TEX comes for free.

"LaTeX adds to TeX a collection of commands that simplify typesetting by letting the user concentrate on the structure of the text rather than on formatting commands. In turning TeX into LaTeX, I have tried to convert a highly-tuned racing car into a comfortable family sedan. The family sedan isn't meant to go as fast as a racing car or be as exciting to drive, but it's comfortable and gets you to the grocery store with no fuss. However, the LaTeX sedan has all the power of TeX hidden under its hood, and the more adventurous driver can do everything with it that he can with TeX."

Leslie Lamport

UNIV. SALZBURG
COMPUTERWISSENSCHAFTEN

What is LaTeX?

"LaTeX adds to TeX a collection of commands that simplify typesetting by letting the user concentrate on the structure of the text rather than on formatting commands. In turning TeX into LaTeX, I have tried to convert a highly-tuned racing car into a comfortable family sedan. The family sedan isn't meant to go as fast as a racing car or be as exciting to drive, but it's comfortable and gets you to the grocery store with no fuss. However, the LaTeX sedan has all the power of TeX hidden under its hood, and the more adventurous driver can do everything with it that he can with TeX."

Leslie Lamport

- Leslie Lamport was the winner of the 2013 ACM Turing Award.

Basics of LaTeX

- Designed and implemented by Leslie Lamport in the early 80s;
- Lots of macros that are based on TeX;
- Lamport: "LaTeX is your typographic designer, and TeX is its typesetter";

Basics of LaTeX

- Designed and implemented by Leslie Lamport in the early 80s;
- Lots of macros that are based on TeX;
- Lamport: “LaTeX is your typographic designer, and TeX is its typesetter”;
- WYSIWYG: “what you see is what you get”;
- WYSIWYG: “what you see is all you’ve got” (B. Reid, B. Kernighan);
- LaTeX is not a WYSIWYG program;

Basics of LaTeX

- Designed and implemented by Leslie Lamport in the early 80s;
- Lots of macros that are based on TeX;
- Lamport: "LaTeX is your typographic designer, and TeX is its typesetter";
- WYSIWYG: "what you see is what you get";
- WYSIWYG: "what you see is all you've got" (B. Reid, B. Kernighan);
- LaTeX is not a WYSIWYG program;
- LaTeX enables (and even forces) the author to concentrate on the logical structure of a text, rather than on details of its layout;
- LaTeX offers (and enforces) a "logical design", contrary to the "visual design" of a conventional WYSIWYG program: separate presentation from content!

Basics of LaTeX

- Designed and implemented by Leslie Lamport in the early 80s;
- Lots of macros that are based on TeX;
- Lamport: “LaTeX is your typographic designer, and TeX is its typesetter”;
- WYSIWYG: “what you see is what you get”;
- WYSIWYG: “what you see is all you’ve got” (B. Reid, B. Kernighan);
- LaTeX is not a WYSIWYG program;
- LaTeX enables (and even forces) the author to concentrate on the logical structure of a text, rather than on details of its layout;
- LaTeX offers (and enforces) a “logical design”, contrary to the “visual design” of a conventional WYSIWYG program: separate presentation from content!
- We are in a migration phase from LaTeX 2.09 to LaTeX3; the current version of LaTeX is called LaTeX 2_ε. (But, for the sake of simplicity, we will use the term “LaTeX” to denote the current version.)

Advantages of LaTeX

- Professional layouts are readily available;
- Only a few structuring commands control the logical structure of a document;

UNIV. SALZBURG
COMPUTERWISSENSCHAFTEN

Advantages of $\LaTeX$

- Professional layouts are readily available;
- Only a few structuring commands control the logical structure of a document;
- Complex mathematical formulae are typeset neatly;

Advantages of $\LaTeX$

- Professional layouts are readily available;
- Only a few structuring commands control the logical structure of a document;
- Complex mathematical formulae are typeset neatly;
- Footnotes, tables of contents, tables, figures, bibliographic data, and similar cross-referencing are easily incorporated into a document;
- All cross-references are updated automatically when the document changes;

Advantages of LaTeX

- Professional layouts are readily available;
- Only a few structuring commands control the logical structure of a document;
- Complex mathematical formulae are typeset neatly;
- Footnotes, tables of contents, tables, figures, bibliographic data, and similar cross-referencing are easily incorporated into a document;
- All cross-references are updated automatically when the document changes;
- LaTeX files are plain ASCII files, and your favorite text editor suffices for preparing a LaTeX document;

Advantages of LaTeX

- Professional layouts are readily available;
- Only a few structuring commands control the logical structure of a document;
- Complex mathematical formulae are typeset neatly;
- Footnotes, tables of contents, tables, figures, bibliographic data, and similar cross-referencing are easily incorporated into a document;
- All cross-references are updated automatically when the document changes;
- LaTeX files are plain ASCII files, and your favorite text editor suffices for preparing a LaTeX document;
- LaTeX is the most widely accepted standard for writing scientific papers in the fields of computer science and mathematics;
- LaTeX is publicly available (under the LaTeX Project Public License (LPPL)), including its source code, and it comes for free.

Disadvantages of LaTeX

- Not a WYSIWYG program;

UNIV. SALZBURG
COMPUTERWISSENSCHAFTEN

Disadvantages of LaTeX

- Not a WYSIWYG program;
- Minor modifications of the default layout are easily accomplished, but major changes require a thorough understanding of LaTeX;

Disadvantages of LaTeX

- Not a WYSIWYG program;
- Minor modifications of the default layout are easily accomplished, but major changes require a thorough understanding of LaTeX;
- The support for non-English languages still ought to be improved;

UNIV. SALZBURG
COMPUTERWISSENSCHAFTEN

Disadvantages of LaTeX

- Not a WYSIWYG program;
- Minor modifications of the default layout are easily accomplished, but major changes require a thorough understanding of LaTeX;
- The support for non-English languages still ought to be improved;
- Complicated figures are hard to prepare using LaTeX, and require the use of some drafting package.

Books on TeX and LaTeX I

- D.E. Knuth.
  The TeXbook.
  Addison-Wesley, 1988. ISBN 978-0201134483.
- L. Lamport.
  LaTeX. A Document Preparation System. 2nd edition.
  Addison-Wesley, Nov 1994. ISBN 978-0201529838.
- F. Mittelbach et alii.
  The LaTeX Companion. 2nd edition.
  Addison-Wesley, May 2004. ISBN 978-0201362992.
- M. Goossens et alii.
  The LaTeX Graphics Companion. 2nd edition.
  Addison-Wesley, April 2007. ISBN 978-0321508928.
- H. Kopka and P.W. Daly.
  Guide to LaTeX. 4th revised edition.
  Addison-Wesley, 2003. ISBN 978-0321173850.

Books on TEX and LATEX II

- Wikibooks.
  LATEX Wikibook.
  Wikibooks, `https://en.wikibooks.org/wiki/LaTeX`.
- H. Voß.
  Einführung in LATEX: unter Berücksichtigung von pdfLATEX, XƎLATEX und LuaLATEX.
  Lehmanns Media, Feb 2012. ISBN 978-3865414625.
- M. Kohm.
  Koma-Script. 5th revised and extended edition.
  Lehmanns Media, 2014. ISBN 978-3-86541-613-1.

LaTeX Input Characters

- The input to LaTeX is an ASCII text file.
- Unless LaTeX add-on packages are used (e.g., to support UTF-8 encoding), the following characters are the only ones that normally appear in a LaTeX input file.

letters: A,. . . ,Z; a,. . . ,z;

digits: 0,. . . ,9;

punctuation chars: . : ; . ? ! ` ' " ( ) [ ] - / * @

special chars: # $ % & _ { } ~ ^ \

math chars: + = | < >

- The input to LaTeX is an ASCII text file.
- Unless LaTeX add-on packages are used (e.g., to support UTF-8 encoding), the following characters are the only ones that normally appear in a LaTeX input file.

  letters: A,. . . ,Z; a,. . . ,z;
  digits: 0,. . . ,9;
  punctuation chars: `. : ; . ? ! ` ' " ( ) [ ] - / * @`
  special chars: `# $ % & _ { } ~ ^ \`
  math chars: $+ = | < >$
- Most (European) installations of LaTeX will be able to handle German "Umlaut" (and similar characters that do not belong to English) directly as part of the input. In particular, UTF-8 support has become widely available and de-facto standard.

UNIV. SALZBURG
COMPUTERWISSENSCHAFTEN

- The input to LaTeX is an ASCII text file.
- Unless LaTeX add-on packages are used (e.g., to support UTF-8 encoding), the following characters are the only ones that normally appear in a LaTeX input file.

  letters: A,. . . ,Z; a,. . . ,z;
  digits: 0,. . . ,9;
  punctuation chars: `. : ; . ? ! ` ' " ( ) [ ] - / * @`
  special chars: `# $ % & _ { } ~ ^ \`
  math chars: $+ = | < >$

- Most (European) installations of LaTeX will be able to handle German “Umlaut” (and similar characters that do not belong to English) directly as part of the input. In particular, UTF-8 support has become widely available and de-facto standard.
- Note that the percent sign (%) is interpreted by LaTeX as the start of a comment! (LaTeX will ignore the rest of a line after reading a % sign.)

- The input to LaTeX is an ASCII text file.
- Unless LaTeX add-on packages are used (e.g., to support UTF-8 encoding), the following characters are the only ones that normally appear in a LaTeX input file.

letters: A,...,Z; a,...,z;
digits: 0,...,9;
punctuation chars: `. : ; . ? ! ` ' " ( ) [ ] - / * @`
special chars: `# $ % & _ { } ~ ^ \`
math chars: $+ = | < >$

- Most (European) installations of LaTeX will be able to handle German “Umlaut” (and similar characters that do not belong to English) directly as part of the input. In particular, UTF-8 support has become widely available and de-facto standard.
- Note that the percent sign (%) is interpreted by LaTeX as the start of a comment! (LaTeX will ignore the rest of a line after reading a % sign.)
- Similarly, all the other special characters have a special meaning for LaTeX.
- In order to produce any of the signs # $ % & _ { }, the sign itself has to be preceded by a back slash. That is, $ is produced by means of `\$`. Furthermore, `\textbackslash` produces \, `\textasciicircum` produces ^, and `\textasciitilde` produces ~.

Basic LaTeX Document

- The main part of a LaTeX document starts with a `\begin{document}` command and ends with `\end{document}`.
- The part of the input file preceding the command `\begin{document}` is called the *preamble*.
- The preamble contains declarations which globally affect the appearance of the formatted text.

UNIV. SALZBURG
COMPUTERWISSENSCHAFTEN

Basic LaTeX Document

- The main part of a LaTeX document starts with a `\begin{document}` command and ends with `\end{document}`.
- The part of the input file preceding the command `\begin{document}` is called the *preamble*.
- The preamble contains declarations which globally affect the appearance of the formatted text.
- LaTeX input is free-format:
  - The number of spaces (or line breaks) in the input file does not matter. One space is as good as ten spaces.
  - Also, LaTeX only cares about empty lines (that separate paragraphs), but does not care about how lines are broken between consecutive non-empty lines.

UNIV. SALZBURG
COMPUTERWISSENSCHAFTEN

Basic LaTeX Document

```
\documentclass[12pt,fleqn]{article}
   % Specifies the document class and the type size.
   % Also, we do not want equations to be centered.
   % The preamble begins here.
\title{\textbf{\LaTeXe\ }}
   % Declares the document's title. We request bold-face font.
\author{Martin Held}
   % Declares the author's name.
\date{October 29, 2013}
   % Deleting this command produces today's date.
\begin{document}
   % End of preamble and beginning of text.
\maketitle
   % Produces the title.
\section{Introduction}
   % Declares a section.
This is a short survey of the \LaTeXe\ typesetting system.
...
\end{document}
   % End of document. LaTeX won't read beyond this line!
```

Running LaTeX

1. Write or modify the document by means of an ASCII editor, and save it to a file with extension `.tex`.

1. Write or modify the document by means of an ASCII editor, and save it to a file with extension `.tex`.
2. Invoke LaTeX, e.g. `latex foo.tex`, in order to process the LaTeX file `foo.tex`.
3. In case of LaTeX errors go back to 1.

Running LaTeX

1. Write or modify the document by means of an ASCII editor, and save it to a file with extension `.tex`.
2. Invoke LaTeX, e.g. `latex foo.tex`, in order to process the LaTeX file `foo.tex`.
3. In case of LaTeX errors go back to 1.
4. Run BibTeX, by envoking the command `bibtex foo`, if a (new) bibliographic data base is to be included.

Running LaTeX

1. Write or modify the document by means of an ASCII editor, and save it to a file with extension `.tex`.
2. Invoke LaTeX, e.g. `latex foo.tex`, in order to process the LaTeX file `foo.tex`.
3. In case of LaTeX errors go back to 1.
4. Run BibTeX, by envoking the command `bibtex foo`, if a (new) bibliographic data base is to be included.
5. Re-run LaTeX until all symbolic labels for cross-referencing are stable. (LaTeX will tell you whether any labels have changed.)

Running LaTeX

1. Write or modify the document by means of an ASCII editor, and save it to a file with extension `.tex`.
2. Invoke LaTeX, e.g. `latex foo.tex`, in order to process the LaTeX file `foo.tex`.
3. In case of LaTeX errors go back to 1.
4. Run BibTeX, by envoking the command `bibtex foo`, if a (new) bibliographic data base is to be included.
5. Re-run LaTeX until all symbolic labels for cross-referencing are stable. (LaTeX will tell you whether any labels have changed.)
6. Use a previewer in order to view the DVI file. E.g., `xdvi foo.dvi` under the X11 windowing system.

Running LaTeX

1. Write or modify the document by means of an ASCII editor, and save it to a file with extension `.tex`.
2. Invoke LaTeX, e.g. `latex foo.tex`, in order to process the LaTeX file `foo.tex`.
3. In case of LaTeX errors go back to 1.
4. Run BibTeX, by envoking the command `bibtex foo`, if a (new) bibliographic data base is to be included.
5. Re-run LaTeX until all symbolic labels for cross-referencing are stable. (LaTeX will tell you whether any labels have changed.)
6. Use a previewer in order to view the DVI file. E.g., `xdvi foo.dvi` under the X11 windowing system.
7. Back to 1 if changes are to be carried out.

Running LaTeX

1. Write or modify the document by means of an ASCII editor, and save it to a file with extension `.tex`.
2. Invoke LaTeX, e.g. `latex foo.tex`, in order to process the LaTeX file `foo.tex`.
3. In case of LaTeX errors go back to 1.
4. Run BibTeX, by envoking the command `bibtex foo`, if a (new) bibliographic data base is to be included.
5. Re-run LaTeX until all symbolic labels for cross-referencing are stable. (LaTeX will tell you whether any labels have changed.)
6. Use a previewer in order to view the DVI file. E.g., `xdvi foo.dvi` under the X11 windowing system.
7. Back to 1 if changes are to be carried out.
8. Use a device driver in order to convert the DVI file to a file that can be printed on your printer. E.g., `dvips -o foo.ps foo.dvi` in order to create PostScript.

Document Classes and Options

- Standard classes for ordinary documents are `article`, `report`, `book`, `letter`, and `slides`.
- By default every document is formatted for `10pt` types.
- However, `11pt` and `12pt` types can be requested. (Larger type sizes can be defined, too.)

UNIV. SALZBURG
COMPUTERWISSENSCHAFTEN

Document Classes and Options

- Standard classes for ordinary documents are `article`, `report`, `book`, `letter`, and `slides`.
- By default every document is formatted for `10pt` types.
- However, `11pt` and `12pt` types can be requested. (Larger type sizes can be defined, too.)
- Additional document-class options include `fleqn` and `twoside`, among many others. See the LaTeX Book for details.

UNIV. SALZBURG
COMPUTERWISSENSCHAFTEN

Document Classes and Options

- Standard classes for ordinary documents are `article`, `report`, `book`, `letter`, and `slides`.
- By default every document is formatted for `10pt` types.
- However, `11pt` and `12pt` types can be requested. (Larger type sizes can be defined, too.)
- Additional document-class options include `fleqn` and `twoside`, among many others. See the LaTeX Book for details.
- User-defined options can be included, too. However, in this case the environment variable `TEXINPUTS` has to be set to the appropriate search path if a user-defined document-class option or package is not contained in the actual working directory. E.g., for `tcsh`:

  ```
  setenv TEXINPUTS .:${HOME}/figures:${TEXINPUTS}
  ```

UNIV. SALZBURG
COMPUTERWISSENSCHAFTEN

2 LaTeX for Scientific Text Processing

UNIV. SALZBURG
COMPUTERWISSENSCHAFTEN

Commands for High-Level Structuring

- A sectional unit is begun by a sectioning command with the unit's title as its argument.

```
\section{Commands for Structuring}
\subsection{Sectioning}
```

UNIV. SALZBURG
COMPUTERWISSENSCHAFTEN

Commands for High-Level Structuring

- A sectional unit is begun by a sectioning command with the unit's title as its argument.

```
\section{Commands for Structuring}
\subsection{Sectioning}
```

- The sectioning commands provided include `\part`, `\chapter`, `\section`, `\subsection`, `\subsubsection`, `\paragraph`, and `\subparagraph`. Note that the set of commands available depends on the document class.

Commands for High-Level Structuring

- A sectional unit is begun by a sectioning command with the unit's title as its argument.

```
\section{Commands for Structuring}
\subsection{Sectioning}
```

- The sectioning commands provided include `\part`, `\chapter`, `\section`, `\subsection`, `\subsubsection`, `\paragraph`, and `\subparagraph`. Note that the set of commands available depends on the document class.
- LaTeX automatically generates the (sub)section numbers — subsections are numbered within sections.
- For omitting the numbers, add a $\star$ after the command.

Commands for High-Level Structuring

- A sectional unit is begun by a sectioning command with the unit's title as its argument.

```
\section{Commands for Structuring}
\subsection{Sectioning}
```

- The sectioning commands provided include `\part`, `\chapter`, `\section`, `\subsection`, `\subsubsection`, `\paragraph`, and `\subparagraph`. Note that the set of commands available depends on the document class.
- LaTeX automatically generates the (sub)section numbers — subsections are numbered within sections.
- For omitting the numbers, add a $\star$ after the command.
- There is also an `\appendix` command, which does not directly produce text. Rather, it causes sectional units to be numbered properly for an appendix.

UNIV. SALZBURG
COMPUTERWISSENSCHAFTEN

Commands for High-Level Structuring

- A sectional unit is begun by a sectioning command with the unit's title as its argument.

```
\section{Commands for Structuring}
\subsection{Sectioning}
```

- The sectioning commands provided include `\part`, `\chapter`, `\section`, `\subsection`, `\subsubsection`, `\paragraph`, and `\subparagraph`. Note that the set of commands available depends on the document class.
- LaTeX automatically generates the (sub)section numbers — subsections are numbered within sections.
- For omitting the numbers, add a $\star$ after the command.
- There is also an `\appendix` command, which does not directly produce text. Rather, it causes sectional units to be numbered properly for an appendix.
- Larger documents can be split into individual files, which are incorporated by `\include{...}` or `\input{...}`.
- Main difference: The command `\include{...}` causes LaTeX to start the material included on a new page.

Commands for Low-Level Structuring

- LaTeX uses a construction called *environment* in order to group portions of text that are subordinate to the surrounding text or that function as equal units.
- An environment is generated by typing the commands
  `\begin{name} ...\end{name}`,
  where `name` denotes the name of the environment.
- The `\begin` and `\end` commands delimit the scope of the environment.

UNIV. SALZBURG
COMPUTERWISSENSCHAFTEN

Commands for Low-Level Structuring

- LaTeX uses a construction called *environment* in order to group portions of text that are subordinate to the surrounding text or that function as equal units.
- An environment is generated by typing the commands
  `\begin{name} ...\end{name}`,
  where `name` denotes the name of the environment.
- The `\begin` and `\end` commands delimit the scope of the environment.
- Examples of environments are given by `quote`, for making quotations, `verse`, for doing poetry, and by `verbatim`, which is used for simulating typed text.

UNIV. SALZBURG
COMPUTERWISSENSCHAFTEN

List-Making Environments

- LaTeX provides three predefined environments for making lists: `itemize`, `enumerate`, and `description`.
- In all three environments, every new list item is begun with an `\item` command.

List-Making Environments

- LaTeX provides three predefined environments for making lists: `itemize`, `enumerate`, and `description`.
- In all three environments, every new list item is begun with an `\item` command.
  - The following example shows an `itemize`d list:

```
\begin{itemize}
  \item A single list item.
  \item And yet another one.
\end{itemize}
```

- A single list item.
- And yet another one.

UNIV. SALZBURG COMPUTERWISSENSCHAFTEN

List-Making Environments

- LaTeX provides three predefined environments for making lists: `itemize`, `enumerate`, and `description`.
- In all three environments, every new list item is begun with an `\item` command.
  - The following example shows an `itemize`d list:

```
\begin{itemize}
  \item A single list item.
  \item And yet another one.
\end{itemize}
```

- A single list item.
- And yet another one.

- And here comes an `enumerate`d list:

```
\begin{enumerate}
  \item A single list item.
  \item And yet another one.
\end{enumerate}
```

1. A single list item.
2. And yet another one.

UNIV. SALZBURG
COMPUTERWISSENSCHAFTEN

List-Making Environments

- In the `description` environment, the `item` command takes an optional argument:

```
\begin{description}
  \item[Foo:] A single list item.
  \item[FooFoo:] And yet another one.
\end{description}
```

Foo: A single list item.
FooFoo: And yet another one.

1. Of course, LaTeX allows to nest lists, usually up to some fixed depth (such as 7).

List-Making Environments

1. Of course, LaTeX allows to nest lists, usually up to some fixed depth (such as 7).
2. If the same environments are nested, e.g. an `enumerate` environment within an `enumerate` environment, then LaTeX automatically chooses different kinds of labels for each list.
3.
    a. There is a default numbering scheme for nested lists.
    b. Of course, you are free to change the default scheme if you don't like it.

UNIV. SALZBURG
COMPUTERWISSENSCHAFTEN

List-Making Environments

1. Of course, LaTeX allows to nest lists, usually up to some fixed depth (such as 7).
2. If the same environments are nested, e.g. an `enumerate` environment within an `enumerate` environment, then LaTeX automatically chooses different kinds of labels for each list.
3.
   a. There is a default numbering scheme for nested lists.
   b. Of course, you are free to change the default scheme if you don't like it.
4. More customized lists can be generated by using the `list` environment. See the LaTeX Book for details.

Type Styles

- Most sentences, including this phrase, are printed in a type style called 'roman'. Roman is LaTeX's default type style for printed documents, while Sans Serif is used for slides.

Type Styles

- Most sentences, including this phrase, are printed in a type style called ‘roman’. Roman is LaTeX’s default type style for printed documents, while Sans Serif is used for slides.
- LaTeX distinguishes between three components that specify a type style:
  - *shape* (Dt.: Form),
  - *series* (Dt.: Stärke),
  - *family* (Dt.: Familie),

  which can be combined in order to produce more elaborate effects.

Type Styles

- Most sentences, including this phrase, are printed in a type style called 'roman'. Roman is LaTeX's default type style for printed documents, while Sans Serif is used for slides.
- LaTeX distinguishes between three components that specify a type style:
  - *shape* (Dt.: Form),
  - *series* (Dt.: Stärke),
  - *family* (Dt.: Familie),

  which can be combined in order to produce more elaborate effects.
- E.g., specifying

```
\usepackage[T1]{fontenc}
\newcommand{\changefont}[3]{
\fontfamily{#1} \fontseries{#2} \fontshape{#3} \selectfont}
```

  in the preamble allows to select type styles as follows:

```
\changefont{family}{series}{shape}
```

  where `family`, `series` and `shape` stand for the font acronyms known to LaTeX.
- Then the command

```
\changefont{cmdh}{m}{n}
```

  turns on Computer Modern Dunhill.

UNIV. SALZBURG
COMPUTERWISSENSCHAFTEN

Type Styles

- Quite a few fancy typefaces and fonts are available; consult the LaTeX Companion for details.
- The old LaTeX 2.09 commands for changing standard type styles (e.g., `\tt`) are deprecated but they still work. In any case, the use of the new commands (e.g., `\texttt` instead of `\tt`) is encouraged.

Standard Type Styles

- Shown below are the basic type styles, together with the declarations that turn them on.

```
\textrm{This is a roman type style.}
\textbf{This is a bold type style.}
\textsf{This is a sans serif type style.}
\textsl{This is a slanted type style.}
\textsc{This is a Small Caps type style.}
\texttt{This is a typewriter type style.}
\textit{This is an italic type style.}
```

This is a roman type style.
This is a bold type style.
This is a sans serif type style.
This is a slanted type style.
THIS IS A SMALL CAPS TYPE STYLE.
`This is a typewriter type style.`
This is an italic type style.

Type Sizes

- The following declarations select a type size; they are listed below in non-decreasing size.
  - `\tiny`;
  - `\scriptsize`;
  - `\footnotesize`;
  - `\small`;
  - `\normalsize`;
  - `\large`;
  - `\Large`;
  - `\LARGE`;
  - `\huge`;
  - `\Huge`.

UNIV. SALZBURG
COMPUTERWISSENSCHAFTEN

Type Sizes

- The following declarations select a type size; they are listed below in non-decreasing size.
  - `\tiny`;
  - `\scriptsize`;
  - `\footnotesize`;
  - `\small`;
  - `\normalsize`;
  - `\large`;
  - `\Large`;
  - `\LARGE`;
  - `\huge`;
  - `\Huge`.
- Note that the actual type size produced by one of these size declarations depends on the default type size of the document.
- Note that some declarations may have the same effect, depending on the document class and default type size used.

UNIV. SALZBURG
COMPUTERWISSENSCHAFTEN

Type Sizes

- Of course, changes of type style and type size can be combined. For instance, the command `{\textit{\texttt{\LARGE word}}}` produces this *word*.

Type Sizes

- Of course, changes of type style and type size can be combined. For instance, the command `{\textit{\texttt{\LARGE word}}}` produces this *word*.
- Note, however, that you should not expect your LaTeX installation to provide all the fonts for all imaginable combinations of type styles at all possible type sizes.
- If the `mktexpk` program is installed, `dvips` will automatically invoke METAFONT to generate fonts that do not already exist, *provided* that a METAFONT source for this font is available.

UNIV. SALZBURG
COMPUTERWISSENSCHAFTEN

Aligning Text in Columns

- In the `tabbing` environment, text is aligned by explicitly setting tab stops, as it is done with an ordinary typewriter.
- Tab stops are set using the `\=` command, and `\>` moves to the next tab stop.
- Lines are separated by the `\\` command.

UNIV. SALZBURG
COMPUTERWISSENSCHAFTEN

Aligning Text in Columns

- In the `tabbing` environment, text is aligned by explicitly setting tab stops, as it is done with an ordinary typewriter.
- Tab stops are set using the `\=` command, and `\>` moves to the next tab stop.
- Lines are separated by the `\\` command.
- The following LaTeX code produces the listing given below:

```
\begin{tabbing}
Bears: \= Kodiak Bear \= (Kodiak Island), \kill
Bears: \> Polar Bear  \> (Arctic Region),\\
       \> Kodiak Bear \> (Kodiak Island), \\
       \> Grizzly     \> (Western US, Canada).
\end{tabbing}
```

Bears:	Polar Bear	(Arctic Region),
	Kodiak Bear	(Kodiak Island),
	Grizzly	(Western US, Canada).

Aligning Text in Columns

- The `tabular` environment is somewhat similar to the `tabbing` environment.
- Columns are separated by `&`, and an input line is ended by `\\`.
- Frames can be made by requesting horizontal and vertical lines to be drawn by means of specifying `\hline` and |.

UNIV. SALZBURG
COMPUTERWISSENSCHAFTEN

Aligning Text in Columns

- The `tabular` environment is somewhat similar to the `tabbing` environment.
- Columns are separated by `&`, and an input line is ended by `\\`.
- Frames can be made by requesting horizontal and vertical lines to be drawn by means of specifying `\hline` and |.

```
\begin{tabular}{||l|c|r||} \hline
\multicolumn{3}{||c||}{Bears of the World} \\
\hline \hline
Bears & Polar Bear  & (Arctic Region) \\ \hline
      & Kodiak Bear & (Kodiak Island) \\ \cline{2-3}
      & Grizzly     & (Western US, Canada) \\
\hline \hline
\end{tabular}
```

Bears of the World		
Bears	Polar Bear	(Arctic Region)
	Kodiak Bear	(Kodiak Island)
	Grizzly	(Western US, Canada)

UNIV. SALZBURG COMPUTERWISSENSCHAFTEN

Aligning Text in Columns

- Note that the `@{`*string*`}` construct makes it possible to specify the column separator. Effectively, this command kills the intercolumn space and replaces it by *string*.

UNIV. SALZBURG
COMPUTERWISSENSCHAFTEN

- Note that the `@{`*string*`}` construct makes it possible to specify the column separator. Effectively, this command kills the intercolumn space and replaces it by *string*.
- The following LaTeX code is a standard example for explaining how to line up decimal numbers in one decimal-point-justified column:

```
\begin{tabular}{c r @{.} l} \hline
Symbolic Term & \multicolumn{2}{c}{Numerical Value} \\ \hline
$\pi$                   & 3&1416  \\
$\pi^{\pi}$             & 36&46   \\
$(\pi^{\pi})^{\pi}$     & 80662&7 \\
\end{tabular}
```

Symbolic Term	Numerical Value
π	3.1416
π^{π}	36.46
$(\pi^{\pi})^{\pi}$	80662.7

Math Stuff

- LaTeX is especially good in displaying mathematical stuff.
- It provides the `displaymath` and `equation` environments for displaying formulae.
- These environments are the same except that `equation` numbers the formulae and `displaymath` does not number them.

UNIV. SALZBURG
COMPUTERWISSENSCHAFTEN

- LaTeX is especially good in displaying mathematical stuff.
- It provides the `displaymath` and `equation` environments for displaying formulae.
- These environments are the same except that `equation` numbers the formulae and `displaymath` does not number them.
- For shorthand, `\[ ...\]` may be typed instead of `\begin{displaymath} ...\end{displaymath}`.

$$x' + y^2 = z_1^2$$

```
\[ x' + y^{2} = z_{1}^{2} \]
```

Math Stuff

- A numbered equation:

$$x' + y^2 = z_2^2 \tag{1}$$

```
\begin{equation} \label{eq:foo}
   x' + y^{2} = z_{2}^{2}
\end{equation}
```

UNIV. SALZBURG COMPUTERWISSENSCHAFTEN

- A numbered equation:

$$x' + y^2 = z_2^2 \tag{1}$$

```
\begin{equation} \label{eq:foo}
   x' + y^{2} = z_{2}^{2}
\end{equation}
```

- A formula that appears in the running text, a so-called *in-line formula*, is produced by the `math` environment.
- For shorthand, this environment can be invoked and delimited by `\( ... \)` or by `$ ... $`.
- E.g., `$x' + y^{2} = z_{2}^{2}$` produces $x' + y^2 = z_2^2$.
- Another way for producing an in-line formula is the `\ensuremath` command. It is especially useful for defining a command that can appear in both normal text and formulae.

UNIV. SALZBURG
COMPUTERWISSENSCHAFTEN

- Subscripts and superscripts are made with the _ and ^ commands.

$$x_{1}^{y^{2}}$$

```
\[ x_{1}^{y^{2}}  \]
```

- Subscripts and superscripts are made with the _ and ^ commands.

$$x_1^{y^2}$$

```
\[ x_{1}^{y^{2}}  \]
```

- Fractions are denoted by the / symbol.
- Large fractions may also be displayed using the `\frac` command.

$$\frac{x + y/2}{x - \frac{y}{z+1}}$$

```
\[ \frac{x + y/2}{x - \frac{y}{z+1}} \]
```

Math Stuff

- Subscripts and superscripts are made with the _ and ^ commands.

$$x_1^{y^2}$$

```
\[ x_{1}^{y^{2}}  \]
```

- Fractions are denoted by the / symbol.
- Large fractions may also be displayed using the `\frac` command.

$$\frac{x + y/2}{x - \frac{y}{z+1}}$$

```
\[ \frac{x + y/2}{x - \frac{y}{z+1}} \]
```

- Another option, especially within an inline formula, is to use `\nicefrac`: ${}^{y}\!/_{2}$.
- Note that `\nicefrac` can only be used after putting `\usepackage{nicefrac}` into the preamble.

- Subscripts and superscripts are made with the _ and ^ commands.

$$x_1^{y^2}$$

```
\[ x_{1}^{y^{2}}  \]
```

- Fractions are denoted by the / symbol.
- Large fractions may also be displayed using the `\frac` command.

$$\frac{x + y/2}{x - \frac{y}{z+1}}$$

```
\[ \frac{x + y/2}{x - \frac{y}{z+1}} \]
```

- Another option, especially within an inline formula, is to use `\nicefrac`: $^{y}/_{2}$.
- Note that `\nicefrac` can only be used after putting `\usepackage{nicefrac}` into the preamble.

- As a rule of thumb, many mathematical symbols can be generated by typing commands that are related to the English names of the symbols.

UNIV. SALZBURG
COMPUTERWISSENSCHAFTEN

Sample Math

- More standard math declarations:

$$\sum_{i=1}^{n} \sqrt{x_{i}}$$

```
\[ \sum_{i=1}^{n} \sqrt{x_{i}} \]
```

Sample Math

- More standard math declarations:

$$\sum_{i=1}^{n} \sqrt{x_{i}}$$

```
\[ \sum_{i=1}^{n} \sqrt{x_{i}} \]
```

$$\lim_{n \rightarrow \infty} 1/n = 0$$

```
\[ \lim_{n \rightarrow \infty} 1/n = 0 \]
```

UNIV. SALZBURG
COMPUTERWISSENSCHAFTEN

Sample Math

- More standard math declarations:

$$\sum_{i=1}^{n} \sqrt{x_{i}}$$

```
\[ \sum_{i=1}^{n} \sqrt{x_{i}} \]
```

$$\lim_{n \rightarrow \infty} 1/n = 0$$

```
\[ \lim_{n \rightarrow \infty} 1/n = 0 \]
```

$$\int_{0}^{1} x \sin 1/x \, dx$$

```
\[ \int_{0}^{1} x \sin 1/x \, dx \]
```

UNIV. SALZBURG
COMPUTERWISSENSCHAFTEN

Sample Math

- All the previous formulae were generated as off-line formulae. The following example demonstrates the effect of replacing `$ ... $` by `\[ ... \]`: in-line $\sqrt{\lim_{n\to\infty}\int_{-n}^{n}\frac{1}{x^2}\sin x\,dx}$; and off-line:

$$\sqrt{\lim_{n\to\infty}\int_{-n}^{n}\frac{1}{x^2}\sin x\,dx}.$$

UNIV. SALZBURG
COMPUTERWISSENSCHAFTEN

Sample Math

- All the previous formulae were generated as off-line formulae. The following example demonstrates the effect of replacing `$ ... $` by `\[ ... \]`: in-line $\sqrt{\lim_{n \rightarrow \infty} \int_{-n}^{n} \frac{1}{x^{2}} \sin x \, dx}$; and off-line:

$$\sqrt{ \lim_{n \rightarrow \infty} \int_{-n}^{n} \frac{1}{x^{2}} \sin x \, dx }.$$

- And this is the corresponding math code (without `$ ... $` or `\[ ... \]`):

```
\sqrt{ \lim_{n \rightarrow \infty}
       \int_{-n}^{n} \frac{1}{x^{2}} \sin x \, dx }
```

Sample Math

- All the previous formulae were generated as off-line formulae. The following example demonstrates the effect of replacing `$ ... $` by `\[ ... \]`: in-line $\sqrt{ \lim_{n \rightarrow \infty} \int_{-n}^{n} \frac{1}{x^{2}} \sin x \, dx }$; and off-line:

$$\sqrt{ \lim_{n \rightarrow \infty} \int_{-n}^{n} \frac{1}{x^{2}} \sin x \, dx }.$$

- And this is the corresponding math code (without `$ ... $` or `\[ ... \]`):

```
\sqrt{ \lim_{n \rightarrow \infty}
       \int_{-n}^{n} \frac{1}{x^{2}} \sin x \, dx }
```

- Note that symbols like $\int$ are variable-sized. Their sizes do not only depend on the type size used but also on whether they are displayed off-line, i.e. within `\[ ... \]`, or in-line, i.e., within `$ ... $`.

Mathematical Symbols

- LaTeX supports a variety of special mathematical symbols. (See the LaTeX Book.) Symbols provided include
  - *(binary) operation symbols*, e.g. $\pm$ (`$\pm$`), $\div$ (`$\div$`), $\cdot$ (`$\cdot$`), $\cap$ (`$\cap$`), $\cup$ (`$\cup$`);

Mathematical Symbols

- LaTeX supports a variety of special mathematical symbols. (See the LaTeX Book.) Symbols provided include
  - *(binary) operation symbols*, e.g. $\pm$ (`$\pm$`), $\div$ (`$\div$`), $\cdot$ (`$\cdot$`), $\cap$ (`$\cap$`), $\cup$ (`$\cup$`);
  - *relation symbols*, e.g. $\leq$ (`$\leq$`), $\subset$ (`$\subset$`), $\in$ (`$\in$`);

UNIV. SALZBURG
COMPUTERWISSENSCHAFTEN

Mathematical Symbols

- LaTeX supports a variety of special mathematical symbols. (See the LaTeX Book.) Symbols provided include
  - *(binary) operation symbols*, e.g. $\pm$ (`$\pm$`), $\div$ (`$\div$`), $\cdot$ (`$\cdot$`), $\cap$ (`$\cap$`), $\cup$ (`$\cup$`);
  - *relation symbols*, e.g. $\leq$ (`$\leq$`), $\subset$ (`$\subset$`), $\in$ (`$\in$`);
  - *arrow symbols*, e.g. $\leftarrow$ (`$\leftarrow$`), $\Uparrow$ (`$\Uparrow$`), $\mapsto$ (`$\mapsto$`);

UNIV. SALZBURG
COMPUTERWISSENSCHAFTEN

Mathematical Symbols

- LaTeX supports a variety of special mathematical symbols. (See the LaTeX Book.) Symbols provided include
  - *(binary) operation symbols*, e.g. $\pm$ (`$\pm$`), $\div$ (`$\div$`), $\cdot$ (`$\cdot$`), $\cap$ (`$\cap$`), $\cup$ (`$\cup$`);
  - *relation symbols*, e.g. $\leq$ (`$\leq$`), $\subset$ (`$\subset$`), $\in$ (`$\in$`);
  - *arrow symbols*, e.g. $\leftarrow$ (`$\leftarrow$`), $\Uparrow$ (`$\Uparrow$`), $\mapsto$ (`$\mapsto$`);
  - *miscellaneous symbols*, e.g. $\aleph$ (`$\aleph$`), $\forall$ (`$\forall$`), $\exists$ (`$\exists$`);

UNIV. SALZBURG
COMPUTERWISSENSCHAFTEN

Mathematical Symbols

- LaTeX supports a variety of special mathematical symbols. (See the LaTeX Book.) Symbols provided include
  - *(binary) operation symbols*, e.g. $\pm$ (`$\pm$`), $\div$ (`$\div$`), $\cdot$ (`$\cdot$`), $\cap$ (`$\cap$`), $\cup$ (`$\cup$`);
  - *relation symbols*, e.g. $\leq$ (`$\leq$`), $\subset$ (`$\subset$`), $\in$ (`$\in$`);
  - *arrow symbols*, e.g. $\leftarrow$ (`$\leftarrow$`), $\Uparrow$ (`$\Uparrow$`), $\mapsto$ (`$\mapsto$`);
  - *miscellaneous symbols*, e.g. $\aleph$ (`$\aleph$`), $\forall$ (`$\forall$`), $\exists$ (`$\exists$`);
  - *delimiters*, e.g. $\{$ (`$\{$`), $\lfloor$ (`$\lfloor$`), $\rangle$ (`$\rangle$`).

UNIV. SALZBURG
COMPUTERWISSENSCHAFTEN

- LaTeX supports a variety of special mathematical symbols. (See the LaTeX Book.) Symbols provided include
  - *(binary) operation symbols*, e.g. $\pm$ (`$\pm$`), $\div$ (`$\div$`), $\cdot$ (`$\cdot$`), $\cap$ (`$\cap$`), $\cup$ (`$\cup$`);
  - *relation symbols*, e.g. $\leq$ (`$\leq$`), $\subset$ (`$\subset$`), $\in$ (`$\in$`);
  - *arrow symbols*, e.g. $\leftarrow$ (`$\leftarrow$`), $\Uparrow$ (`$\Uparrow$`), $\mapsto$ (`$\mapsto$`);
  - *miscellaneous symbols*, e.g. $\aleph$ (`$\aleph$`), $\forall$ (`$\forall$`), $\exists$ (`$\exists$`);
  - *delimiters*, e.g. $\{$ (`$\{$`), $\lfloor$ (`$\lfloor$`), $\rangle$ (`$\rangle$`).
- Observe that all those symbols can only be used in the so-called math mode, i.e., within the scope of `$ ... $` or `\[ ... \]`.

Mathematical Symbols

- LaTeX supports a variety of special mathematical symbols. (See the LaTeX Book.) Symbols provided include
  - *(binary) operation symbols*, e.g. $\pm$ (`$\pm$`), $\div$ (`$\div$`), $\cdot$ (`$\cdot$`), $\cap$ (`$\cap$`), $\cup$ (`$\cup$`);
  - *relation symbols*, e.g. $\leq$ (`$\leq$`), $\subset$ (`$\subset$`), $\in$ (`$\in$`);
  - *arrow symbols*, e.g. $\leftarrow$ (`$\leftarrow$`), $\Uparrow$ (`$\Uparrow$`), $\mapsto$ (`$\mapsto$`);
  - *miscellaneous symbols*, e.g. $\aleph$ (`$\aleph$`), $\forall$ (`$\forall$`), $\exists$ (`$\exists$`);
  - *delimiters*, e.g. $\{$ (`$\{$`), $\lfloor$ (`$\lfloor$`), $\rangle$ (`$\rangle$`).
- Observe that all those symbols can only be used in the so-called math mode, i.e., within the scope of `$ ... $` or `\[ ... \]`.
- Many more math-related symbols are contained in packages provided by $\mathcal{AMS}$-LaTeX, such as `amssymb`.

Mathematical Delimiters

- Delimiters can also be used in multi-line formulae. The commands `\left` and `\right` are used in order to make them "fit around".
- The following piece of code produces the following (nonsense) multi-line formula:

```
\[   \vec{a} + \vec{b} = \left(  \begin{array}{c}
                                      c_{x} \\
                                      c_{y}
                                    \end{array}
                          \right\}                  \]
```

$$\vec{a} + \vec{b} = \left(\begin{array}{c} c_{x} \\ c_{y} \end{array} \right\}$$

- Delimiters can also be used in multi-line formulae. The commands `\left` and `\right` are used in order to make them "fit around".
- The following piece of code produces the following (nonsense) multi-line formula:

```
\[   \vec{a} + \vec{b} = \left(  \begin{array}{c}
                                    c_{x} \\
                                    c_{y}
                                 \end{array}
                          \right\}                     \]
```

$$\vec{a} + \vec{b} = \left(\begin{array}{c} c_{x} \\ c_{y} \end{array} \right\}$$

- LaTeX will complain if no matching right delimiter is found – you may use `\right.` as a dummy right delimiter in this case.

- For coding sequences of equations it is convenient to use the `eqnarray` environment, which is very much like a special `array` environment.

$$\begin{aligned} x &= 2y - 3z && (2)\\ 5x + 7y &\geq a + b + c + d + e + f + g + h + i + \\ & \quad j + k + l + m + n + o + p + q && (3) \end{aligned}$$

```
\begin{eqnarray}
   x          &    =    &  2y - 3z \\
   5x + 7y    &   \geq  &  a + b + c + d + e + f + g + h +
                           i + \nonumber \\
              &         &  j + k + l + m + n + o + p + q
\end{eqnarray}
```

- For coding sequences of equations it is convenient to use the `eqnarray` environment, which is very much like a special `array` environment.

$$
\begin{aligned}
x &= 2y - 3z && (2)\\
5x + 7y &\geq a + b + c + d + e + f + g + h + i + \\
&\quad j + k + l + m + n + o + p + q && (3)
\end{aligned}
$$

```
\begin{eqnarray}
   x         &    =    &  2y - 3z \\
   5x + 7y   &  \geq   &  a + b + c + d + e + f + g + h +
                          i + \nonumber \\
             &         &  j + k + l + m + n + o + p + q
\end{eqnarray}
```

- Note that the alignment is handled by LaTeX. You can put `\tiny` around the `eqnarray` construct, and it will again be aligned properly:

$$
\begin{aligned}
x &= 2y - 3z && (4)\\
5x + 7y &\geq a + b + c + d + e + f + g + h + i + \\
&\quad j + k + l + m + n + o + p + q && (5)
\end{aligned}
$$

Greek Characters

- LaTeX is also good in producing Greek and other (foreign) letters. The command for producing a Greek letter is obtained by placing a \ in front of the (English) name of the letter. For instance, `$\gammma$` produces γ.

Greek Characters

- LaTeX is also good in producing Greek and other (foreign) letters. The command for producing a Greek letter is obtained by placing a \ in front of the (English) name of the letter. For instance, `$\gammma$` produces γ.
- Uppercase Greek letters are generated by capitalizing the first letter of the command name, as long as the uppercase Greek letter is not the same as its Roman equivalent. For instance, `$\Gamma$` produces Γ.

Floating Environments: Figures and Tables

- Since pictures and tables cannot be split at page breaks LaTeX provides two environments, `figure` and `table`, that can float to convenient places.

UNIV. SALZBURG
COMPUTERWISSENSCHAFTEN

Floating Environments: Figures and Tables

- Since pictures and tables cannot be split at page breaks LaTeX provides two environments, `figure` and `table`, that can float to convenient places.
- The `figure` environment is generally used for pictures and the `table` environment for tabular information.
- The major difference between both environments is how they are captioned: for several document classes the figure's caption ("Figure XX:...") is below the body of the figure whereas the table's caption ("Table XX:...") goes above the table.
- All LaTeX cares about is to find suitable positions, as long as possible, for placing their contents without generating half-empty pages.

UNIV. SALZBURG
COMPUTERWISSENSCHAFTEN

Floating Environments: Figures and Tables

- Since pictures and tables cannot be split at page breaks LaTeX provides two environments, `figure` and `table`, that can float to convenient places.
- The `figure` environment is generally used for pictures and the `table` environment for tabular information.
- The major difference between both environments is how they are captioned: for several document classes the figure's caption ("Figure XX:...") is below the body of the figure whereas the table's caption ("Table XX:...") goes above the table.
- All LaTeX cares about is to find suitable positions, as long as possible, for placing their contents without generating half-empty pages.

```
\begin{figure}[!tbph]
The body of the figure goes here. You may want to leave some space by using
the \vspace{...} command.
\caption{The caption goes here.}
\end{figure}
```

UNIV. SALZBURG
COMPUTERWISSENSCHAFTEN

- LaTeX's decision where to place a floating object can be influenced by specifying any combination of the parameters `t, b, p` and `h`, where `t` means that you suggest to place the figure at the top of the (following) page, relative to the position of the text around the place where you specified the figure in your input file.
- Similarly, `b` stands for bottom. A `p` indicates that LaTeX is allowed to generate an extra page of floats, which does not contain any text.

UNIV. SALZBURG
COMPUTERWISSENSCHAFTEN

- LaTeX's decision where to place a floating object can be influenced by specifying any combination of the parameters `t, b, p` and `h`, where `t` means that you suggest to place the figure at the top of the (following) page, relative to the position of the text around the place where you specified the figure in your input file.
- Similarly, `b` stands for bottom. A `p` indicates that LaTeX is allowed to generate an extra page of floats, which does not contain any text.
- If you are really keen on having the figure put exactly where you specified it, you may want to try `h` — for 'here'; LaTeX sometimes even cares about your wishes.
- If you add a `!` to the location, LaTeX tries harder to satisfy your request.

LaTeX and PostScript Figures

- For creating simple pictures within a figure, the `picture` environment may be used.
- However, the creation of pictures is not a real highlight of LaTeX and it is usually better to import pictures created by some other system.

LaTeX and PostScript Figures

- For creating simple pictures within a figure, the `picture` environment may be used.
- However, the creation of pictures is not a real highlight of LaTeX and it is usually better to import pictures created by some other system.
- As long as pictures are imported in '*Encapsulated PostScript*' (EPS) style, LaTeX automatically takes care of the amount of height needed by the picture.
- An EPS figure is imported by the following commands, typically placed into the body of a figure. (Of course, the centering command may be skipped.)

```
\begin{center}
\includegraphics[width=8.3cm]{name_of_file}
\end{center}
```

- For creating simple pictures within a figure, the `picture` environment may be used.
- However, the creation of pictures is not a real highlight of LaTeX and it is usually better to import pictures created by some other system.
- As long as pictures are imported in '*Encapsulated PostScript*' (EPS) style, LaTeX automatically takes care of the amount of height needed by the picture.
- An EPS figure is imported by the following commands, typically placed into the body of a figure. (Of course, the centering command may be skipped.)

```
\begin{center}
\includegraphics[width=8.3cm]{name_of_file}
\end{center}
```

- For our example, the figure will be scaled to fit into a horizontal space with width 8.3cm.
- Note, however, that in order to support this command the `graphicx` package must be included by putting `\usepackage{graphicx}` into the preamble.

LaTeX and PostScript Figures

- Similarly, a figure can be scaled to fit into a prescribed vertical space.
- The `width` or `height` command is optional; omitting it causes LaTeX to reproduce the figure at its original size.

LaTeX and PostScript Figures

- Similarly, a figure can be scaled to fit into a prescribed vertical space.
- The `width` or `height` command is optional; omitting it causes LaTeX to reproduce the figure at its original size.
- The size of a PostScript figure can also be specified relative to document measures:

```
\includegraphics[width=0.5\textwidth]{name_of_file}
```

- We will learn more about how to incorporate PostScript files after discussing packages for drawing figures . . .

UNIV. SALZBURG
COMPUTERWISSENSCHAFTEN

2 LaTeX for Scientific Text Processing

UNIV. SALZBURG
COMPUTERWISSENSCHAFTEN

Non-Latin Characters

- LaTeX was originally designed for English. It has limited built-in support for other languages.
- As far as German is concerned, a minimal subset of standardized commands for German has been agreed upon.
  - `\"a` or `"a` produces ä;
  - `\ss` or `"s` produces ß;
  - ``"` `` and `"'` produce German left and right double quotes. (Resort to `\glqq` and `\grqq` if ``"` `` and `"'` do not work.)

Non-Latin Characters

- LaTeX was originally designed for English. It has limited built-in support for other languages.
- As far as German is concerned, a minimal subset of standardized commands for German has been agreed upon.
  - `\"a` or `"a` produces ä;
  - `\ss` or `"s` produces ß;
  - ``"` `` and `"'` produce German left and right double quotes. (Resort to `\glqq` and `\grqq` if ``"` `` and `"'` do not work.)
- Special diacritical marks of other languages are produced similarly to German symbols.
- For instance, `\'e` produces é, `\~n` results in ñ, and `\c{c}` yields ç.

UNIV. SALZBURG
COMPUTERWISSENSCHAFTEN

Non-Latin Characters

- LaTeX was originally designed for English. It has limited built-in support for other languages.
- As far as German is concerned, a minimal subset of standardized commands for German has been agreed upon.
  - `\"a` or `"a` produces ä;
  - `\ss` or `"s` produces ß;
  - ``"` `` and `"'` produce German left and right double quotes. (Resort to `\glqq` and `\grqq` if ``"` `` and `"'` do not work.)
- Special diacritical marks of other languages are produced similarly to German symbols.
- For instance, `\'e` produces é, `\~n` results in ñ, and `\c{c}` yields ç.
- The package `textgreek` allows to produce α as `\textalpha` and A as `\textAlpha`.

Non-Latin Characters

- LaTeX was originally designed for English. It has limited built-in support for other languages.
- As far as German is concerned, a minimal subset of standardized commands for German has been agreed upon.
  - `\"a` or `"a` produces ä;
  - `\ss` or `"s` produces ß;
  - ``"` `` and `"'` produce German left and right double quotes. (Resort to `\glqq` and `\grqq` if ``"` `` and `"'` do not work.)
- Special diacritical marks of other languages are produced similarly to German symbols.
- For instance, `\'e` produces é, `\~n` results in ñ, and `\c{c}` yields ç.
- The package `textgreek` allows to produce α as `\textalpha` and A as `\textAlpha`.
- Cyrillic, Hebrew and a lot of other special-language character sets can be produced similarly to producing Greek characters, provided that the fonts required for actually generating them are available.

Non-Latin Characters

- LaTeX was originally designed for English. It has limited built-in support for other languages.
- As far as German is concerned, a minimal subset of standardized commands for German has been agreed upon.
  - `\"a` or `"a` produces ä;
  - `\ss` or `"s` produces ß;
  - ``"` `` and `"'` produce German left and right double quotes. (Resort to `\glqq` and `\grqq` if ``"` `` and `"'` do not work.)
- Special diacritical marks of other languages are produced similarly to German symbols.
- For instance, `\'e` produces é, `\~n` results in ñ, and `\c{c}` yields ç.
- The package `textgreek` allows to produce α as `\textalpha` and A as `\textAlpha`.
- Cyrillic, Hebrew and a lot of other special-language character sets can be produced similarly to producing Greek characters, provided that the fonts required for actually generating them are available.
- Of course, these commands are intended for sporadic use within a text, e.g., to typeset something like β-decay.

Non-Latin Characters

- LaTeX was originally designed for English. It has limited built-in support for other languages.
- As far as German is concerned, a minimal subset of standardized commands for German has been agreed upon.
  - `\"a` or `"a` produces ä;
  - `\ss` or `"s` produces ß;
  - ``"` `` and `"'` produce German left and right double quotes. (Resort to `\glqq` and `\grqq` if ``"` `` and `"'` do not work.)
- Special diacritical marks of other languages are produced similarly to German symbols.
- For instance, `\'e` produces é, `\~n` results in ñ, and `\c{c}` yields ç.
- The package `textgreek` allows to produce α as `\textalpha` and A as `\textAlpha`.
- Cyrillic, Hebrew and a lot of other special-language character sets can be produced similarly to producing Greek characters, provided that the fonts required for actually generating them are available.
- Of course, these commands are intended for sporadic use within a text, e.g., to typeset something like β-decay.
- Note that LaTeX does not hyphenate German (Greek, . . .) words correctly without being supplied with German (Greek, . . .) hyphenation patterns!

Internationalization

- In order to support truly multi-lingual texts, LaTeX needs to take care of the following issues:
  1. All automatically generated text elements (such as names of months) need to be set in the appropriate language (other than English).

UNIV. SALZBURG
COMPUTERWISSENSCHAFTEN

- In order to support truly multi-lingual texts, LaTeX needs to take care of the following issues:
  1. All automatically generated text elements (such as names of months) need to be set in the appropriate language (other than English).
  2. Language-specific typographic rules need to be obeyed.

UNIV. SALZBURG
COMPUTERWISSENSCHAFTEN

Internationalization

- In order to support truly multi-lingual texts, LaTeX needs to take care of the following issues:
    1. All automatically generated text elements (such as names of months) need to be set in the appropriate language (other than English).
    2. Language-specific typographic rules need to be obeyed.
    3. Hyphenation patterns need to be known.

UNIV. SALZBURG
COMPUTERWISSENSCHAFTEN

Internationalization

- In order to support truly multi-lingual texts, LaTeX needs to take care of the following issues:
  1. All automatically generated text elements (such as names of months) need to be set in the appropriate language (other than English).
  2. Language-specific typographic rules need to be obeyed.
  3. Hyphenation patterns need to be known.
  4. Language-specific characters should be handled directly without fancy encoding.

UNIV. SALZBURG
COMPUTERWISSENSCHAFTEN

Internationalization

- In order to support truly multi-lingual texts, LaTeX needs to take care of the following issues:
  1. All automatically generated text elements (such as names of months) need to be set in the appropriate language (other than English).
  2. Language-specific typographic rules need to be obeyed.
  3. Hyphenation patterns need to be known.
  4. Language-specific characters should be handled directly without fancy encoding.
- If your LaTeX system is set up correctly, then the first three tasks are handled neatly by the package `babel`: E.g., put

  ```
  \usepackage[american,austrian]{babel}
  ```

  into the preamble, right after the `\documentclass` command and prior to all other package requests, in order to turn on support for the Austrian variety of German and the American variety of English.

- In order to support truly multi-lingual texts, LaTeX needs to take care of the following issues:
  1. All automatically generated text elements (such as names of months) need to be set in the appropriate language (other than English).
  2. Language-specific typographic rules need to be obeyed.
  3. Hyphenation patterns need to be known.
  4. Language-specific characters should be handled directly without fancy encoding.
- If your LaTeX system is set up correctly, then the first three tasks are handled neatly by the package `babel`: E.g., put

```
\usepackage[american,austrian]{babel}
```

  into the preamble, right after the `\documentclass` command and prior to all other package requests, in order to turn on support for the Austrian variety of German and the American variety of English.
- The last language in your list of options will be active; use `\selectlanguage` to change the active language:

```
\selectlanguage{american}.
```

Internationalization

- LaTeX uses the `inputenc` package to provide support for input of non-latin characters directly from the keyboard. For instance, you may want to use ISO-LATIN 1 for encoding most European (Latin-like) character sets,

  ```
  \usepackage[latin1]{inputenc}
  ```

  or

  ```
  \usepackage[koi8-r]{inputenc}
  ```

  for encoding Cyrillic characters — provided that this is the encoding used by your editor!

Internationalization

- LaTeX uses the `inputenc` package to provide support for input of non-latin characters directly from the keyboard. For instance, you may want to use ISO-LATIN 1 for encoding most European (Latin-like) character sets,

  ```
  \usepackage[latin1]{inputenc}
  ```

  or

  ```
  \usepackage[koi8-r]{inputenc}
  ```

  for encoding Cyrillic characters — provided that this is the encoding used by your editor!
- Note, though, that the portability of your LaTeX input files depends heavily on the availability of these packages!
- Note also that different characters may map to the same encoding on different platforms or in different linguistic environments.
- For best-possible multi-lingual support you may want to resort to

  ```
  \usepackage[utf8]{inputenc}.
  ```

Internationalization

- The package `fontenc` tells LaTeX which font encoding to use.
- If accented (Latin) characters are used then you may want to request Type 1 (versions of the EC) fonts:

  `\usepackage[T1]{fontenc}`.

- The package `fontenc` tells LaTeX which font encoding to use.
- If accented (Latin) characters are used then you may want to request Type 1 (versions of the EC) fonts:

  `\usepackage[T1]{fontenc}`.
- The option `[T2A]` is used in conjunction with native Cyrillic input, while `[OT2]` seems better when typing only a few Cyrillic words on a Latin-like keyboard. That is,

  `\usepackage[OT2,T1]{fontenc}`.

  Then `\foreignlanguage{russian}{SSR}` will yield ССР, and `\foreignlanguage{russian}{Moskva}` will yield Москва.

UNIV. SALZBURG
COMPUTERWISSENSCHAFTEN

- The package `fontenc` tells LaTeX which font encoding to use.
- If accented (Latin) characters are used then you may want to request Type 1 (versions of the EC) fonts:

  `\usepackage[T1]{fontenc}`.
- The option `[T2A]` is used in conjunction with native Cyrillic input, while `[OT2]` seems better when typing only a few Cyrillic words on a Latin-like keyboard. That is,

  `\usepackage[OT2,T1]{fontenc}`.

  Then `\foreignlanguage{russian}{SSR}` will yield ССР, and `\foreignlanguage{russian}{Moskva}` will yield Москва.
- Similarly for other languages that are not based on (a variation of) the Latin alphabet. E.g., `\foreignlanguage{greek}{Ajhna}` will produce Αϑηνα, i.e., Athens in Greek.

Internationalization

- The package `fontenc` tells LaTeX which font encoding to use.
- If accented (Latin) characters are used then you may want to request Type 1 (versions of the EC) fonts:

  `\usepackage[T1]{fontenc}`.
- The option `[T2A]` is used in conjunction with native Cyrillic input, while `[OT2]` seems better when typing only a few Cyrillic words on a Latin-like keyboard. That is,

  `\usepackage[OT2,T1]{fontenc}`.

  Then `\foreignlanguage{russian}{SSR}` will yield ССР, and `\foreignlanguage{russian}{Moskva}` will yield Москва.
- Similarly for other languages that are not based on (a variation of) the Latin alphabet. E.g., `\foreignlanguage{greek}{Ajhna}` will produce Αϑηνα, i.e., Athens in Greek.
- After specifying `\usepackage[autostyle]{csquotes}` in the preamble, `\enquote{...}` automatically selects the language-specific appropriate quotes (if `\usepackage{babel}` was loaded).

Euro Symbol

- The European Commission defined the Euro symbol as a strictly geometric logo. That is, the official symbol was meant to be a sans serif character, always the same regardless of the font being used. This violates normal typesetting conventions. Nowadays the European Commission no longer insists on the use of the Euro logo (instead of font-based Euro symbols).

Euro Symbol

- The European Commission defined the Euro symbol as a strictly geometric logo. That is, the official symbol was meant to be a sans serif character, always the same regardless of the font being used. This violates normal typesetting conventions. Nowadays the European Commission no longer insists on the use of the Euro logo (instead of font-based Euro symbols).
- The package `textcomp` offers the command `\texteuro` to produce €.
- Note: Whether or not this symbol looks decent depends on the font used! (If a font contains no Euro glyph then you might even see nothing but a black rectangle . . .)

Euro Symbol

- The European Commission defined the Euro symbol as a strictly geometric logo. That is, the official symbol was meant to be a sans serif character, always the same regardless of the font being used. This violates normal typesetting conventions. Nowadays the European Commission no longer insists on the use of the Euro logo (instead of font-based Euro symbols).
- The package `textcomp` offers the command `\texteuro` to produce €.
- Note: Whether or not this symbol looks decent depends on the font used! (If a font contains no Euro glyph then you might even see nothing but a black rectangle . . .)
- Another option is the use of the `eurosym` package: the command `\euro` will produce €, which again depends on the font.

Euro Symbol

- The European Commission defined the Euro symbol as a strictly geometric logo. That is, the official symbol was meant to be a sans serif character, always the same regardless of the font being used. This violates normal typesetting conventions. Nowadays the European Commission no longer insists on the use of the Euro logo (instead of font-based Euro symbols).
- The package `textcomp` offers the command `\texteuro` to produce €.
- Note: Whether or not this symbol looks decent depends on the font used! (If a font contains no Euro glyph then you might even see nothing but a black rectangle . . .)
- Another option is the use of the `eurosym` package: the command `\euro` will produce €, which again depends on the font.
- Good option for producing the Euro logo: Martin Vogel's *MarVoSym Font Package*.
- After putting `\usepackage{marvosym}` into the preamble (and after installing the proper font descriptions), the Euro symbol can be created: € (`\EUR`).

UNIV. SALZBURG
COMPUTERWISSENSCHAFTEN

Euro Symbol

- The European Commission defined the Euro symbol as a strictly geometric logo. That is, the official symbol was meant to be a sans serif character, always the same regardless of the font being used. This violates normal typesetting conventions. Nowadays the European Commission no longer insists on the use of the Euro logo (instead of font-based Euro symbols).
- The package `textcomp` offers the command `\texteuro` to produce €.
- Note: Whether or not this symbol looks decent depends on the font used! (If a font contains no Euro glyph then you might even see nothing but a black rectangle . . .)
- Another option is the use of the `eurosym` package: the command `\euro` will produce €, which again depends on the font.
- Good option for producing the Euro logo: Martin Vogel's *MarVoSym Font Package*.
- After putting `\usepackage{marvosym}` into the preamble (and after installing the proper font descriptions), the Euro symbol can be created: € (`\EUR`).
- Conventional resizing commands of LaTeX may be applied. E.g., `{\LARGE\EUR}` produces a large € logo.

UNIV. SALZBURG
COMPUTERWISSENSCHAFTEN

Other Symbols

- The *MarVoSym F⚽nt Package* also provides quite a few other symbols. E.g.:
  Communication: 🖂 (`\Letter`), ☎ (`\Telefon`), 📠 (`\Faxmachine`);

Other Symbols

- The *MarVoSym F⚽nt Package* also provides quite a few other symbols. E.g.:

  Communication: ✉ (`\Letter`), ☎ (`\Telefon`), 📠 (`\Faxmachine`);

  Navigation: ⏮ (`\RewindToIndex`), ▶ (`\Forward`), ⧗ (`\ToBottom`);

Other Symbols

- The *MarVoSym F⚽nt Package* also provides quite a few other symbols. E.g.:

  Communication: ✉ (`\Letter`), ☎ (`\Telefon`), 📠 (`\Faxmachine`);
  Navigation: ⏮ (`\RewindToIndex`), ▶ (`\Forward`), ⧗ (`\ToBottom`);
  Computing: 🖱 (`\ComputerMouse`), 🖨 (`\Printer`), ⟺ (`\SerialPort`), ▦ (`\ParallelPort`), ⌨ (`\Keyboard`);
  Numbers: 0 (`\MVZero`), 1 (`\MVOne`), 2 (`\MVTwo`), 9 (`\MVNine`);

Other Symbols

- The *MarVoSym Font Package* also provides quite a few other symbols. E.g.:

  Communication: ✉ (`\Letter`), ☎ (`\Telefon`), 📠 (`\Faxmachine`);
  Navigation: ⏮ (`\RewindToIndex`), ▶ (`\Forward`), ⧗ (`\ToBottom`);
  Computing: 🖱 (`\ComputerMouse`), 🖶 (`\Printer`), (`\SerialPort`), (`\ParallelPort`), ⌨ (`\Keyboard`);
  Numbers: 0 (`\MVZero`), 1 (`\MVOne`), 2 (`\MVTwo`), 9 (`\MVNine`);
  Information: @ (`\MVAt`), ☞ (`\PointingHand`), ⚒ (`\MineSign`), ♲ (`\Recycling`), (`\PackingWaste`), ℹ (`\Info`);

UNIV. SALZBURG
COMPUTERWISSENSCHAFTEN

Other Symbols

- The *MarVoSym Font Package* also provides quite a few other symbols. E.g.:

Communication: ✉ (`\Letter`), ☎ (`\Telefon`), 📠 (`\Faxmachine`);
Navigation: ⏮ (`\RewindToIndex`), ▶ (`\Forward`), ⧗ (`\ToBottom`);
Computing: 🖱 (`\ComputerMouse`), 🖶 (`\Printer`), ⟺ (`\SerialPort`), (`\ParallelPort`), ⌨ (`\Keyboard`);
Numbers: 0 (`\MVZero`), 1 (`\MVOne`), 2 (`\MVTwo`), 9 (`\MVNine`);
Information: @ (`\MVAt`), ☞ (`\PointingHand`), ⚒ (`\MineSign`), ♲ (`\Recycling`), (`\PackingWaste`), ℹ (`\Info`);
Safety: CE (`\CEsign`), 🛑 (`\Stopsign`), ☢ (`\Radioactivity`), (`\Laserbeam`), ☣ (`\Biohazard`), ϟ (`\Lightning`);

UNIV. SALZBURG
COMPUTERWISSENSCHAFTEN

Other Symbols

- The *MarVoSym F⚽nt Package* also provides quite a few other symbols. E.g.:

Communication: ✉ (`\Letter`), ☎ (`\Telefon`), 📠 (`\Faxmachine`);
Navigation: ⏮ (`\RewindToIndex`), ▶ (`\Forward`), ⧗ (`\ToBottom`);
Computing: 🖱 (`\ComputerMouse`), 🖶 (`\Printer`), ⟺ (`\SerialPort`), ⁞⁞⁞⁞⁞ (`\ParallelPort`), ⌨ (`\Keyboard`);
Numbers: 0 (`\MVZero`), 1 (`\MVOne`), 2 (`\MVTwo`), 9 (`\MVNine`);
Information: @ (`\MVAt`), ☞ (`\PointingHand`), ⚒ (`\MineSign`), ♲ (`\Recycling`), ♻ (`\PackingWaste`), ℹ (`\Info`);
Safety: CE (`\CEsign`), 🛑 (`\Stopsign`), ☢ (`\Radioactivity`), ✷— (`\Laserbeam`), ☣ (`\Biohazard`), ϟ (`\Lightning`);
Biology: ♀ (`\Female`), ♂ (`\MALE`), ⚥ (`\FemaleMale`);

- The *MarVoSym Font Package* also provides quite a few other symbols. E.g.:

Communication: ✉ (`\Letter`), ☎ (`\Telefon`), 📠 (`\Faxmachine`);
Navigation: ⏮ (`\RewindToIndex`), ▶ (`\Forward`), ⧗ (`\ToBottom`);
Computing: 🖱 (`\ComputerMouse`), 🖨 (`\Printer`), (`\SerialPort`), (`\ParallelPort`), ⌨ (`\Keyboard`);
Numbers: 0 (`\MVZero`), 1 (`\MVOne`), 2 (`\MVTwo`), 9 (`\MVNine`);
Information: @ (`\MVAt`), ☞ (`\PointingHand`), ⚒ (`\MineSign`), ♲ (`\Recycling`), (`\PackingWaste`), ℹ (`\Info`);
Safety: CE (`\CEsign`), 🛑 (`\Stopsign`), ☢ (`\Radioactivity`), (`\Laserbeam`), ☣ (`\Biohazard`), ϟ (`\Lightning`);
Biology: ♀ (`\Female`), ♂ (`\MALE`), ⚥ (`\FemaleMale`);
Miscellaneous: ₰ (`\Deleatur`), ☯ (`\YinYang`), ☹ (`\Frowny`), ☺ (`\Smiley`), ✂ (`\Rightscissors`), ⚽ (`\Football`), ♡ (`\Heart`), Ⓐ (`\CircledA`), 🚲 (`\Bicycle`);

Other Symbols

- The *MarVoSym F⚽nt Package* also provides quite a few other symbols. E.g.:

Communication: 🖂 (`\Letter`), ☎ (`\Telefon`), 📠 (`\Faxmachine`);

Navigation: ⏮ (`\RewindToIndex`), ▶ (`\Forward`), ⧗ (`\ToBottom`);

Computing: 🖱 (`\ComputerMouse`), 🖶 (`\Printer`), ⎓ (`\SerialPort`), ▦ (`\ParallelPort`), ⌨ (`\Keyboard`);

Numbers: 0 (`\MVZero`), 1 (`\MVOne`), 2 (`\MVTwo`), 9 (`\MVNine`);

Information: @ (`\MVAt`), ☞ (`\PointingHand`), ⚒ (`\MineSign`), ♲ (`\Recycling`), ♻ (`\PackingWaste`), ℹ (`\Info`);

Safety: CE (`\CEsign`), 🛑 (`\Stopsign`), ☢ (`\Radioactivity`), ✹— (`\Laserbeam`), ☣ (`\Biohazard`), ϟ (`\Lightning`);

Biology: ♀ (`\Female`), ♂ (`\MALE`), ⚤ (`\FemaleMale`);

Miscellaneous: ₰ (`\Deleatur`), ☯ (`\YinYang`), ☹ (`\Frowny`), ☺ (`\Smiley`), ✂ (`\Rightscissors`), ⚽ (`\Football`), ♡ (`\Heart`), Ⓐ (`\CircledA`), 🚲 (`\Bicycle`);

Laundry: 40 (`\AtForty`), (`\IroningII`), ⊠ (`\NoTumbler`);

Astronomy: ☉ (`\Sun`), ☽ (`\Moon`), ♁ (`\Earth`), ♆ (`\Neptune`);

Astrology: ♈ (`\Aries`), ♉ (`\Taurus`), ♑ (`\Capricorn`), ♓ (`\Pisces`).

Other Symbols

- Do not forget that LaTeX does already provide quite a few symbols, such as § (`\S`), © (`\copyright`), £ (`\pounds`), or ‰ (`\textperthousand`).

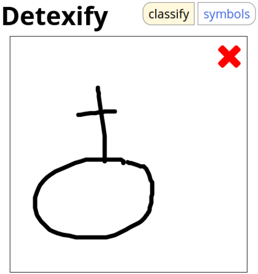
Other Symbols

- Do not forget that LaTeX does already provide quite a few symbols, such as § (`\S`), © (`\copyright`), £ (`\pounds`), or ‰ (`\textperthousand`).
- See *The Comprehensive LaTeX Symbol List* for more details.

Other Symbols

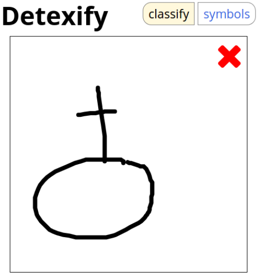
- Do not forget that LaTeX does already provide quite a few symbols, such as § (`\S`), © (`\copyright`), £ (`\pounds`), or ‰ (`\textperthousand`).
- See *The Comprehensive LaTeX Symbol List* for more details.
- The web-based utility Detexify, `detexify.kirelabs.org/classify.html`, lets you use the mouse to draw a symbol and then runs a pattern matcher to find LaTeX commands that produce symbols which look similar.

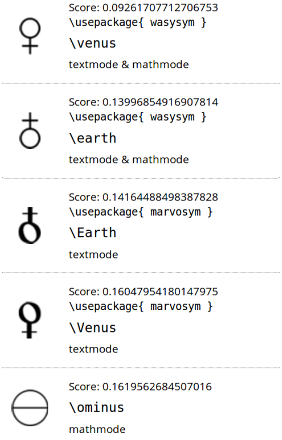
- Do not forget that LaTeX does already provide quite a few symbols, such as § (`\S`), © (`\copyright`), £ (`\pounds`), or ‰ (`\textperthousand`).
- See *The Comprehensive LaTeX Symbol List* for more details.
- The web-based utility Detexify, `detexify.kirelabs.org/classify.html`, lets you use the mouse to draw a symbol and then runs a pattern matcher to find LaTeX commands that produce symbols which look similar.



Other Symbols

- Do not forget that LaTeX does already provide quite a few symbols, such as § (`\S`), © (`\copyright`), £ (`\pounds`), or ‰ (`\textperthousand`).
- See *The Comprehensive LaTeX Symbol List* for more details.
- The web-based utility Detexify, `detexify.kirelabs.org/classify.html`, lets you use the mouse to draw a symbol and then runs a pattern matcher to find LaTeX commands that produce symbols which look similar.





2 LaTeX for Scientific Text Processing

- Getting Started with LaTeX
- Basic LaTeX Layout Commands
- Beyond Latin Characters for English-Language Texts
- Cross-Referencing and Bibliographic References
  - Cross-Referencing
  - Bibliographic References
- Extending LaTeX
- Trouble Shooting

UNIV. SALZBURG
COMPUTERWISSENSCHAFTEN

Cross-Referencing

- LaTeX can automatically generate a table of contents and similar cross-references if asked to do so.
- The command `\tableofcontents` tells LaTeX where to put the table of contents within the document.

Cross-Referencing

- LaTeX can automatically generate a table of contents and similar cross-references if asked to do so.
- The command `\tableofcontents` tells LaTeX where to put the table of contents within the document.
- Note that it requires (at least) two runs in order to generate a correct table of contents.
- In the first run LaTeX extracts all necessary sectional information and writes it to a file with extension `.toc`.
- When invoked for the second time, it reads this file and generates a table of contents according to the layout arranged in the previous run. Besides, it issues a warning message if the actual sectional information does not correspond to the old table of contents read from the `.toc` file.

Cross-Referencing

- LaTeX can automatically generate a table of contents and similar cross-references if asked to do so.
- The command `\tableofcontents` tells LaTeX where to put the table of contents within the document.
- Note that it requires (at least) two runs in order to generate a correct table of contents.
- In the first run LaTeX extracts all necessary sectional information and writes it to a file with extension `.toc`.
- When invoked for the second time, it reads this file and generates a table of contents according to the layout arranged in the previous run. Besides, it issues a warning message if the actual sectional information does not correspond to the old table of contents read from the `.toc` file.
- The commands `\listoffigures` and `\listoftables` produce a list of figures and a list of tables, respectively. They work just like the `\tableofcontents` command, except that files with extensions `.lof` and `.lot` are involved.

Cross-Referencing

- Nearly every numbered environment can be referred to after a *key* has been assigned to it.
- A key is assigned by means of the `\label{key}` command, which can be put anywhere within the scope of the environment to be referenced, and where `key` is the symbolic key.

UNIV. SALZBURG
COMPUTERWISSENSCHAFTEN

Cross-Referencing

- Nearly every numbered environment can be referred to after a *key* has been assigned to it.
- A key is assigned by means of the `\label{key}` command, which can be put anywhere within the scope of the environment to be referenced, and where `key` is the symbolic key.
- Reference is made by means of the `\ref{key}` command.

UNIV. SALZBURG
COMPUTERWISSENSCHAFTEN

Cross-Referencing

- Nearly every numbered environment can be referred to after a *key* has been assigned to it.
- A key is assigned by means of the `\label{key}` command, which can be put anywhere within the scope of the environment to be referenced, and where `key` is the symbolic key.
- Reference is made by means of the `\ref{key}` command.
- As in the case of generating a table of contents, LaTeX needs two runs and one additional file, with extension `.aux`, for generating correct references.

Cross-Referencing

- For instance, recall that our first numbered equation was Equation 1.
- The label for this reference was generated by putting `\label{eq:foo}` within the environment of the equation to be referenced, and by referring to it as `\ref{eq:foo}`.

Cross-Referencing

- For instance, recall that our first numbered equation was Equation 1.
- The label for this reference was generated by putting `\label{eq:foo}` within the environment of the equation to be referenced, and by referring to it as `\ref{eq:foo}`.
- Similarly, sections, pages and other numbered units can be referenced.

UNIV. SALZBURG
COMPUTERWISSENSCHAFTEN

Cross-Referencing

- For instance, recall that our first numbered equation was Equation 1.
- The label for this reference was generated by putting `\label{eq:foo}` within the environment of the equation to be referenced, and by referring to it as `\ref{eq:foo}`.
- Similarly, sections, pages and other numbered units can be referenced.
- However, for references to pages it is necessary to substitute the `\ref` command by a `\pageref` command.

UNIV. SALZBURG
COMPUTERWISSENSCHAFTEN

Cross-Referencing

- For instance, recall that our first numbered equation was Equation 1.
- The label for this reference was generated by putting `\label{eq:foo}` within the environment of the equation to be referenced, and by referring to it as `\ref{eq:foo}`.
- Similarly, sections, pages and other numbered units can be referenced.
- However, for references to pages it is necessary to substitute the `\ref` command by a `\pageref` command.
- Caveat: For establishing a reference to a figure or a table, make sure to put the `\label` command *after* the `\caption` command.

Bibliographic Citations

- A citation is a cross-reference to another publication, such as a book.
- With LaTeX you can use a separate program called BibTeX to generate bibliographical data from information stored in a bibliographical database, i.e., in a collection of files with extensions `.bib`.

Bibliographic Citations

- A citation is a cross-reference to another publication, such as a book.
- With LaTeX you can use a separate program called BibTeX to generate bibliographical data from information stored in a bibliographical database, i.e., in a collection of files with extensions `.bib`.
- If the bibliographical database is not contained in your actual working directory then you may want to inform LaTeX where to find this database by setting the environment variable `BIBINPUTS` to the appropriate search path, e.g.,

```
setenv BIBINPUTS .:$HOME/papers/biblio//
```

UNIV. SALZBURG
COMPUTERWISSENSCHAFTEN

Bibliographic Citations

- A citation is a cross-reference to another publication, such as a book.
- With LaTeX you can use a separate program called BibTeX to generate bibliographical data from information stored in a bibliographical database, i.e., in a collection of files with extensions `.bib`.
- If the bibliographical database is not contained in your actual working directory then you may want to inform LaTeX where to find this database by setting the environment variable `BIBINPUTS` to the appropriate search path, e.g.,

  ```
  setenv BIBINPUTS .:$HOME/papers/biblio//
  ```

- When calling BibTeX, the information requested by `\cite` commands is extracted from the bibliographical database and is stored in two files with extensions `.bbl` and `.blg`.

UNIV. SALZBURG
COMPUTERWISSENSCHAFTEN

Bibliographic Citations

- The following example shows a sample entry to a BIB file:

```
@string{AW      = "Addison-Wesley"}
@book{Lamp94,
      author={L. Lamport},
      title={\LaTeX. A Document Preparation System},
      publisher=AW,
      note={ISBN 0-201-52983-1},
      edition={2nd},
      month=nov,
      year=1994}
```

Bibliographic Citations

- The following example shows a sample entry to a BIB file:

```
@string{AW      = "Addison-Wesley"}
@book{Lamp94,
      author={L. Lamport},
      title={\LaTeX. A Document Preparation System},
      publisher=AW,
      note={ISBN 0-201-52983-1},
      edition={2nd},
      month=nov,
      year=1994}
```

- For every cited reference, a bibliography entry is extracted from the BIB file and is formated neatly.

UNIV. SALZBURG
COMPUTERWISSENSCHAFTEN

Bibliographic Citations

- The following example shows a sample entry to a BIB file:

```
@string{AW      = "Addison-Wesley"}
@book{Lamp94,
      author={L. Lamport},
      title={\LaTeX. A Document Preparation System},
      publisher=AW,
      note={ISBN 0-201-52983-1},
      edition={2nd},
      month=nov,
      year=1994}
```

- For every cited reference, a bibliography entry is extracted from the BIB file and is formated neatly.
- As long as the bibliographical database is not changed and no new `\cite` commands are added, the `.bbl` and `.blg` files correctly represent the bibliographical data needed for making citations.
- As with all other symbolic pointers LaTeX needs two runs in order to have all references established.

UNIV. SALZBURG
COMPUTERWISSENSCHAFTEN

Bibliographic Citations

- The placement of the bibliography is controlled by the placement of the `\bibliography{bib_file}` command within the LaTeX file.
- Here, `bib_file.bib` is the name of a file containing the bibliographical data. (It is also possible to use several bib-files as arguments of the `\bibliography` command.)
- Using the sample bib entry, a reference is produced by the command `\cite{Lamp94}`.

UNIV. SALZBURG
COMPUTERWISSENSCHAFTEN

- The placement of the bibliography is controlled by the placement of the `\bibliography{bib_file}` command within the LaTeX file.
- Here, `bib_file.bib` is the name of a file containing the bibliographical data. (It is also possible to use several bib-files as arguments of the `\bibliography` command.)
- Using the sample bib entry, a reference is produced by the command `\cite{Lamp94}`.
- Note that you will have to run BibTeX on the LaTeX document in order to prepare the bibliographic references.
- E.g., `bibtex foo` will run BibTeX on the file `foo.tex` and its corresponding 'auxiliary' file `foo.aux`. Then, you will have to re-run LaTeX twice in order to establish and confirm all citations.

UNIV. SALZBURG COMPUTERWISSENSCHAFTEN

Bibliographic Citations

- The placement of the bibliography is controlled by the placement of the `\bibliography{bib_file}` command within the LaTeX file.
- Here, `bib_file.bib` is the name of a file containing the bibliographical data. (It is also possible to use several bib-files as arguments of the `\bibliography` command.)
- Using the sample bib entry, a reference is produced by the command `\cite{Lamp94}`.
- Note that you will have to run BibTeX on the LaTeX document in order to prepare the bibliographic references.
- E.g., `bibtex foo` will run BibTeX on the file `foo.tex` and its corresponding 'auxiliary' file `foo.aux`. Then, you will have to re-run LaTeX twice in order to establish and confirm all citations.
- A detailed explanation of BibTeX is out of the scope of this survey. For additional information on LaTeX and BibTeX you may want to consult the LaTeX Book.

Bibliographic Citations

- The placement of the bibliography is controlled by the placement of the `\bibliography{bib_file}` command within the LaTeX file.
- Here, `bib_file.bib` is the name of a file containing the bibliographical data. (It is also possible to use several bib-files as arguments of the `\bibliography` command.)
- Using the sample bib entry, a reference is produced by the command `\cite{Lamp94}`.
- Note that you will have to run BibTeX on the LaTeX document in order to prepare the bibliographic references.
- E.g., `bibtex foo` will run BibTeX on the file `foo.tex` and its corresponding 'auxiliary' file `foo.aux`. Then, you will have to re-run LaTeX twice in order to establish and confirm all citations.
- A detailed explanation of BibTeX is out of the scope of this survey. For additional information on LaTeX and BibTeX you may want to consult the LaTeX Book.

- A somewhat more modern way to handle bibliographic citations is to resort to BibLaTeX and `biber` as a replacement for BibTeX.

UNIV. SALZBURG
COMPUTERWISSENSCHAFTEN

2 LaTeX for Scientific Text Processing

UNIV. SALZBURG
COMPUTERWISSENSCHAFTEN

Theorems and Similar Environments

- Theorems can be produced neatly, too.
- LaTeX provides a `\newtheorem` declaration in order to define environments for particular theorem-like environments.

Theorems and Similar Environments

- Theorems can be produced neatly, too.
- LaTeX provides a `\newtheorem` declaration in order to define environments for particular theorem-like environments.

Hypothesis 1 (Murphy)

There is always one error lefft.

```
\newtheorem{hypothesis}{Hypothesis}
\begin{hypothesis}[Murphy] \label{hyp:murphy}
There is always one error lefft.
\end{hypothesis}
```

UNIV. SALZBURG
COMPUTERWISSENSCHAFTEN

Theorems and Similar Environments

- Theorems can be produced neatly, too.
- LaTeX provides a `\newtheorem` declaration in order to define environments for particular theorem-like environments.

Hypothesis 1 (Murphy)

There is always one error lefft.

```
\newtheorem{hypothesis}{Hypothesis}
\begin{hypothesis}[Murphy] \label{hyp:murphy}
There is always one error lefft.
\end{hypothesis}
```

- Like other numbered environments, theorems can also be referenced, and this sometimes even works in spite of Hypothesis 1, which was referenced by means of `\ref{hyp:murphy}`.

UNIV. SALZBURG
COMPUTERWISSENSCHAFTEN

New Commands and Environments

- The layout of a document heavily depends on the document-class options and add-on packages used for formatting it.
- These optional packages contain a myriad of control parameters, environments, and the like, which all can be modified individually in order to fit special purposes.
- However, this is the hard way of forcing LaTeX to modify its formatting strategies, i.e., this is the domain of LaTeX wizards!
- And if all else fails, you can still use plain TeX commands — this is the really hard way and asking a TeX guru is recommended!

UNIV. SALZBURG
COMPUTERWISSENSCHAFTEN

New Commands and Environments

- The layout of a document heavily depends on the document-class options and add-on packages used for formatting it.
- These optional packages contain a myriad of control parameters, environments, and the like, which all can be modified individually in order to fit special purposes.
- However, this is the hard way of forcing LaTeX to modify its formatting strategies, i.e., this is the domain of LaTeX wizards!
- And if all else fails, you can still use plain TeX commands — this is the really hard way and asking a TeX guru is recommended!
- The easier way to modify LaTeX's way of formatting a document is to use the `\newcommand` and `\newenvironment` commands, which allow to define new commands and environments based on already existing ones.
- Another easy alternative is to use one of the many existing add-on packages, see the LaTeX Book or the LaTeX Companion.

UNIV. SALZBURG
COMPUTERWISSENSCHAFTEN

New Commands and Environments: Samples

- We define a template for a 2×2 matrix:

```
\newcommand{\mat_2x2}[4]{\ensuremath{{
    \left(\begin{array}{cc}
             #1 & #2 \\
             #3 & #4
            \end{array} \right) }}}
```

New Commands and Environments: Samples

- We define a template for a 2×2 matrix:

```
\newcommand{\mat_2x2}[4]{\ensuremath{{
    \left(\begin{array}{cc}
              #1 & #2 \\
              #3 & #4
             \end{array} \right) }}}
```

Then `\mat_2x2{\sin \alpha}{2}{0}{\cos \alpha}` yields
$\left(\begin{array}{cc} \sin\alpha & 2 \\ 0 & \cos\alpha \end{array}\right)$.

New Commands and Environments: Samples

- We define a template for a 2×2 matrix:

```
\newcommand{\mat_2x2}[4]{\ensuremath{{
    \left(\begin{array}{cc}
              #1 & #2 \\
              #3 & #4
             \end{array} \right) }}}
```

Then `\mat_2x2{\sin \alpha}{2}{0}{\cos \alpha}` yields

$$\left(\begin{array}{cc} \sin\alpha & 2 \\ 0 & \cos\alpha \end{array}\right).$$

- We get the symbol for the natural numbers, $\mathbb{N}$, by coding `\N` or `$\N$`, based on the following definition:

```
\newcommand{\N}{\ensuremath{\mathbb{N}}\xspace}
```

New Commands and Environments: Samples

- We define a template for a 2×2 matrix:

```
\newcommand{\mat_2x2}[4]{\ensuremath{{
    \left(\begin{array}{cc}
              #1 & #2 \\
              #3 & #4
             \end{array} \right) }}}
```

  Then `\mat_2x2{\sin \alpha}{2}{0}{\cos \alpha}` yields
  $\left(\begin{array}{cc} \sin\alpha & 2 \\ 0 & \cos\alpha \end{array}\right)$.
- We get the symbol for the natural numbers, $\mathbb{N}$, by coding `\N` or `$\N$`, based on the following definition:

```
\newcommand{\N}{\ensuremath{\mathbb{N}}\xspace}
```

- If no environment for sketching a proof is supported by a document's class file, then one could define it as follows:

```
\newenvironment{sketch}[1]{\noindent
                                \textit{Sketch of Proof:} #1}
{\hfill $\Box$ \newline \smallskip}
```

UNIV. SALZBURG
COMPUTERWISSENSCHAFTEN

- We define a template for a 2×2 matrix:

```
\newcommand{\mat_2x2}[4]{\ensuremath{{
    \left(\begin{array}{cc}
             #1 & #2 \\
             #3 & #4
            \end{array} \right) }}}
```

Then `\mat_2x2{\sin \alpha}{2}{0}{\cos \alpha}` yields
$\left(\begin{array}{cc} \sin\alpha & 2 \\ 0 & \cos\alpha \end{array}\right)$.

- We get the symbol for the natural numbers, $\mathbb{N}$, by coding `\N` or `$\N$`, based on the following definition:

```
\newcommand{\N}{\ensuremath{\mathbb{N}}\xspace}
```

- If no environment for sketching a proof is supported by a document's class file, then one could define it as follows:

```
\newenvironment{sketch}[1]{\noindent
                           \textit{Sketch of Proof:} #1}
{\hfill $\Box$ \newline \smallskip}
```

Then `\begin{sketch}Start of my proof $\ldots$ \end{sketch}` will yield the following:
Sketch of Proof: Start of my proof . . .

New Commands and Environments: Specifying the Date

- The command `\today` prints and formats the date of the compilation of the LaTeX document according to the language selected: E.g.,
  - `\selectlanguage{austrian}\today` yields 3. Oktober 2019,
  - `\selectlanguage{russian}\today` yields 3 октября 2019 г.,
  - `\selectlanguage{american}\today` yields October 3, 2019.

New Commands and Environments: Specifying the Date

- The command `\today` prints and formats the date of the compilation of the LaTeX document according to the language selected: E.g.,
  - `\selectlanguage{austrian}\today` yields 3. Oktober 2019,
  - `\selectlanguage{russian}\today` yields 3 октября 2019 г.,
  - `\selectlanguage{american}\today` yields October 3, 2019.
- One can also manipulate the TeX primitives `\day`, `\month`, and `\year`. E.g., the command `\myToday` yields 03-Oct-2019 after setting

```
\newcommand{\monthAsWord}[1]{
   \ifcase#1\or Jan\or Feb\or Mar\or Apr\or
                May\or June\or July\or Aug\or
                Sep\or Oct\or Nov\or Dec\fi}
\newcommand{\leadingZero}[1]{\ifnum #1<10 0\the#1\else\the#1\fi}
\newcommand{\myToday}{
   \leadingZero{\day}-\monthAsWord{\the\month}-\the\year\xspace}
```

UNIV. SALZBURG
COMPUTERWISSENSCHAFTEN

New Commands and Environments: Specifying the Date

- The command `\today` prints and formats the date of the compilation of the LaTeX document according to the language selected: E.g.,
  - `\selectlanguage{austrian}\today` yields 3. Oktober 2019,
  - `\selectlanguage{russian}\today` yields 3 октября 2019 г.,
  - `\selectlanguage{american}\today` yields October 3, 2019.
- One can also manipulate the TeX primitives `\day`, `\month`, and `\year`. E.g., the command `\myToday` yields 03-Oct-2019 after setting

```
\newcommand{\monthAsWord}[1]{
   \ifcase#1\or Jan\or Feb\or Mar\or Apr\or
                May\or June\or July\or Aug\or
                Sep\or Oct\or Nov\or Dec\fi}
\newcommand{\leadingZero}[1]{\ifnum #1<10 0\the#1\else\the#1\fi}
\newcommand{\myToday}{
   \leadingZero{\day}-\monthAsWord{\the\month}-\the\year\xspace}
```

- More elaborate options for formating date and time are provided by the `datetime` package.

UNIV. SALZBURG
COMPUTERWISSENSCHAFTEN

Ready-to-use Packages

- Keep in mind that LaTeX offers tons of special-purpose packages that are ready to use with little effort.

UNIV. SALZBURG
COMPUTERWISSENSCHAFTEN

Ready-to-use Packages

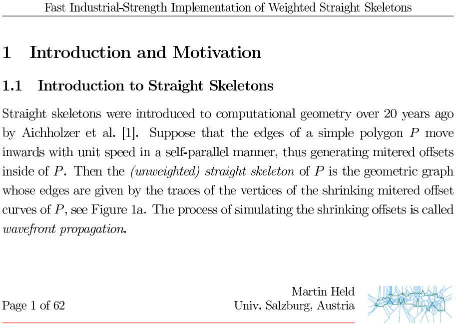
- Keep in mind that LaTeX offers tons of special-purpose packages that are ready to use with little effort.
- E.g., the `url` package allows to use special characters such as _ and & without escaping them if provided as an argument of the `\url{...}` command.

- Keep in mind that LaTeX offers tons of special-purpose packages that are ready to use with little effort.
- E.g., the `url` package allows to use special characters such as _ and & without escaping them if provided as an argument of the `\url{...}` command.
- The `lineno` provides line numbering for an entire document or for individual paragraphs, with the possibility to establish references through the LaTeX `\ref` cross-referencing mechanism.

UNIV. SALZBURG
COMPUTERWISSENSCHAFTEN

Ready-to-use Packages

- Keep in mind that LaTeX offers tons of special-purpose packages that are ready to use with little effort.
- E.g., the `url` package allows to use special characters such as _ and & without escaping them if provided as an argument of the `\url{...}` command.
- The `lineno` provides line numbering for an entire document or for individual paragraphs, with the possibility to establish references through the LaTeX `\ref` cross-referencing mechanism.
- The `fancyhdr` package provides an easy way to customize a document by placing text on the top and/or bottom of every page.


Fast Industrial-Strength Implementation of Weighted Straight Skeletons

1 Introduction and Motivation

1.1 Introduction to Straight Skeletons

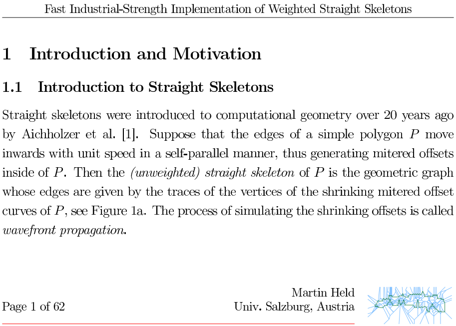
Straight skeletons were introduced to computational geometry over 20 years ago by Aichholzer et al. [1]. Suppose that the edges of a simple polygon P move inwards with unit speed in a self-parallel manner, thus generating mitered offsets inside of P. Then the *(unweighted) straight skeleton* of P is the geometric graph whose edges are given by the traces of the vertices of the shrinking mitered offset curves of P, see Figure 1a. The process of simulating the shrinking offsets is called *wavefront propagation*.

Page 1 of 62

Martin Held
Univ. Salzburg, Austria

Ready-to-use Packages

- Keep in mind that LaTeX offers tons of special-purpose packages that are ready to use with little effort.
- E.g., the `url` package allows to use special characters such as _ and & without escaping them if provided as an argument of the `\url{...}` command.
- The `lineno` provides line numbering for an entire document or for individual paragraphs, with the possibility to establish references through the LaTeX `\ref` cross-referencing mechanism.
- The `fancyhdr` package provides an easy way to customize a document by placing text on the top and/or bottom of every page.


Fast Industrial-Strength Implementation of Weighted Straight Skeletons

1 Introduction and Motivation

1.1 Introduction to Straight Skeletons

Straight skeletons were introduced to computational geometry over 20 years ago by Aichholzer et al. [1]. Suppose that the edges of a simple polygon P move inwards with unit speed in a self-parallel manner, thus generating mitered offsets inside of P. Then the *(unweighted) straight skeleton* of P is the geometric graph whose edges are given by the traces of the vertices of the shrinking mitered offset curves of P, see Figure 1a. The process of simulating the shrinking offsets is called *wavefront propagation*.

Page 1 of 62 Martin Held Univ. Salzburg, Austria

- The `mhchem` package allows to generate $2\,H_2 + O_2 \longrightarrow 2\,H_2O$ as `\ce{2 H2 +  O2 -> 2 H2O}`

Ready-to-use Packages: Colors

- The `xcolor` package lets you define the font color, text background and page background.
- You can choose from predefined colors or define your own colors using RGB, Hex, or CMYK.
- The predefined color names are

  red, green, blue, cyan, magenta, yellow, black, gray, white, darkgray, lightgray, brown, lime, olive, orange, pink, purple, teal, violet.

Ready-to-use Packages: Colors

- The `xcolor` package lets you define the font color, text background and page background.
- You can choose from predefined colors or define your own colors using RGB, Hex, or CMYK.
- The predefined color names are

  red, green, blue, cyan, magenta, yellow, black, gray, white, darkgray, lightgray, brown, lime, olive, orange, pink, purple, teal, violet.

- See latexcolor.com for hundreds of LaTeX color definitions.

Ready-to-use Packages: Colors

- The `xcolor` package lets you define the font color, text background and page background.
- You can choose from predefined colors or define your own colors using RGB, Hex, or CMYK.
- The predefined color names are

  red, green, blue, cyan, magenta, yellow, black, gray, white, darkgray, lightgray, brown, lime, olive, orange, pink, purple, teal, violet.

- See latexcolor.com for hundreds of LaTeX color definitions.
- Sample use: `\textcolor{blue}{some text}` or `{\color{blue} some text}`, or `{\color[wave]{600} light ...}}` to generate light waves of 560 nm.

Ready-to-use Packages: Colors

- The `xcolor` package lets you define the font color, text background and page background.
- You can choose from predefined colors or define your own colors using RGB, Hex, or CMYK.
- The predefined color names are

  red, *green*, *blue*, *cyan*, *magenta*, *yellow*, *black*, *gray*, *white*, *darkgray*, *lightgray*, *brown*, *lime*, *olive*, *orange*, *pink*, *purple*, *teal*, *violet*.

- See latexcolor.com for hundreds of LaTeX color definitions.
- Sample use: `\textcolor{blue}{some text}` or `{\color{blue} some text}`, or `{\color[wave]{600} light ...}}` to generate light waves of 560 nm.
- See the documentation of the `xcolor` package for more details. The following sample was derived from code given in its manual:

Ready-to-use Packages: Specifying Page and Text Size

- Typically, LaTeX will format its output for the US "letter" paper format.

Ready-to-use Packages: Specifying Page and Text Size

- Typically, LaTeX will format its output for the US "letter" paper format.
- The `geometry` package provides a simple way to specify the size and layout of a page.
- E.g., the command

  ```
  \usepackage[a4paper,text={160mm,240mm},centering]{geometry}
  ```

  instructs LaTeX to place a text of total width 160mm and total height 240mm in a centered fashion on DIN A4 paper.
- See the package description of `geometry` for more elaborate options.

Ready-to-use Packages: Specifying Page and Text Size

- Typically, LaTeX will format its output for the US "letter" paper format.
- The `geometry` package provides a simple way to specify the size and layout of a page.
- E.g., the command

  ```
  \usepackage[a4paper,text={160mm,240mm},centering]{geometry}
  ```

  instructs LaTeX to place a text of total width 160mm and total height 240mm in a centered fashion on DIN A4 paper.
- See the package description of `geometry` for more elaborate options.
- Another simple option for changing the text layout is to resort to `\addtolength` commands:

  ```
  \addtolength{\textheight}{20mm}
  \addtolength{\textwidth}{30mm}
  \addtolength{\topmargin}{-15mm}
  \addtolength{\evensidemargin}{-8mm}
  \addtolength{\oddsidemargin}{-8mm}
  ```

UNIV. SALZBURG
COMPUTERWISSENSCHAFTEN

Ready-to-use Packages: “Eurocentric” Document Classes

- The default LaTeX document classes are geared towards US typographic standards and paper sizes.

UNIV. SALZBURG
COMPUTERWISSENSCHAFTEN

- The default LaTeX document classes are geared towards US typographic standards and paper sizes.
- The KOMA-Script bundle provides a versatile set of drop-in replacements for the default LaTeX document classes, with an emphasis on European typographic conventions, and with explicit support for DIN-sized paper.
- The KOMA classes `scrartcl`, `scrreprt`, `scrbook` and `scrlttr2` are the replacements of the standard LaTeX classes `article`, `report`, `book` and `letter`.

Ready-to-use Packages: “Eurocentric” Document Classes

- The default LaTeX document classes are geared towards US typographic standards and paper sizes.
- The KOMA-Script bundle provides a versatile set of drop-in replacements for the default LaTeX document classes, with an emphasis on European typographic conventions, and with explicit support for DIN-sized paper.
- The KOMA classes `scrartcl`, `scrreprt`, `scrbook` and `scrlttr2` are the replacements of the standard LaTeX classes `article`, `report`, `book` and `letter`.
- The KOMA classes support default type sizes larger than `12pt`.
- The KOMA package `scrdate` provides not only the current date but also the name of the day, and the KOMA package `scrtime` allows to include the current time.
- See https://www.komascript.de for additional information.

- Documents with two columns can be created easily by passing the option `twocolumn` to the document class statement.
- This works for most document classes. And it works neatly!

Ready-to-use Packages: Multiple Columns

- Documents with two columns can be created easily by passing the option `twocolumn` to the document class statement.
- This works for most document classes. And it works neatly!
- The package `multicols` provides the `multicols` environment, which takes the number of columns as optional argument (up to a maximum of ten columns).
- The separation of the columns is controlled by `\columnsep`. E.g.,

```
\setlength{\columnsep}{10mm}
\begin{multicols}{3}
Lorem ipsum dolor sit amet, consetetur sadipscing elitr,
sed diam nonumy eirmod tempor invidunt ut labore et dolore
magna aliquyam erat, sed diam voluptua.
\end{multicols}
```

Ready-to-use Packages: Multiple Columns

- Documents with two columns can be created easily by passing the option `twocolumn` to the document class statement.
- This works for most document classes. And it works neatly!
- The package `multicols` provides the `multicols` environment, which takes the number of columns as optional argument (up to a maximum of ten columns).
- The separation of the columns is controlled by `\columnsep`. E.g.,

```
\setlength{\columnsep}{10mm}
\begin{multicols}{3}
Lorem ipsum dolor sit amet, consetetur sadipscing elitr,
sed diam nonumy eirmod tempor invidunt ut labore et dolore
magna aliquyam erat, sed diam voluptua.
\end{multicols}
```

- Note, though, that support for floating environments (still) is poor; floats will show up only at the top or bottom of the next page after they are inserted.

Ready-to-use Packages: AMS Math Packages

- The $\mathcal{AMS}$ math packages `amsmath`, `amssymb` and `amsthm` extend LaTeX's math capabilities. E.g., compare `\frac` to `\tfrac` and `\dfrac`:

$$\frac{1}{2}x^2 = \dfrac{1}{2}x^2 = \tfrac{1}{2}x^2$$

$\frac{1}{2}x^2 = \dfrac{1}{2}x^2 = \tfrac{1}{2}x^2$

UNIV. SALZBURG COMPUTERWISSENSCHAFTEN

Ready-to-use Packages: AMS Math Packages

- The $\mathcal{AMS}$ math packages `amsmath`, `amssymb` and `amsthm` extend LaTeX's math capabilities. E.g., compare `\frac` to `\tfrac` and `\dfrac`:

$$\frac{1}{2}x^2 = \dfrac{1}{2}x^2 = \tfrac{1}{2}x^2$$

$\frac{1}{2}x^2 = \dfrac{1}{2}x^2 = \tfrac{1}{2}x^2$

```
\[
   \frac{1}{2} x^2 = \dfrac{1}{2} x^2 =
   \tfrac{1}{2} x^2
\]
$
   \frac{1}{2} x^2 = \dfrac{1}{2} x^2 =
   \tfrac{1}{2} x^2
$
```

UNIV. SALZBURG
COMPUTERWISSENSCHAFTEN

- The $\mathcal{AMS}$ math packages `amsmath`, `amssymb` and `amsthm` extend LaTeX's math capabilities. E.g., compare `\frac` to `\tfrac` and `\dfrac`:

$$\frac{1}{2}x^2 = \dfrac{1}{2}x^2 = \tfrac{1}{2}x^2$$

$\frac{1}{2}x^2 = \dfrac{1}{2}x^2 = \tfrac{1}{2}x^2$

```
\[
    \frac{1}{2} x^2 = \dfrac{1}{2} x^2 =
    \tfrac{1}{2} x^2
\]
$
    \frac{1}{2} x^2 = \dfrac{1}{2} x^2 =
    \tfrac{1}{2} x^2
$
```

- The package `amsmath` also contains the `cases` and `dcases` environments:

$$F_n = \begin{cases} 0 & n = 0, \\ 1 & n = 1, \\ F_{n-1} + F_{n-2} & n \geq 2. \end{cases}$$

- The $\mathcal{AMS}$ math packages `amsmath`, `amssymb` and `amsthm` extend LaTeX's math capabilities. E.g., compare `\frac` to `\tfrac` and `\dfrac`:

$$\frac{1}{2}x^2 = \dfrac{1}{2}x^2 = \tfrac{1}{2}x^2$$

$\frac{1}{2}x^2 = \dfrac{1}{2}x^2 = \tfrac{1}{2}x^2$

```
\[
    \frac{1}{2} x^2 = \dfrac{1}{2} x^2 =
    \tfrac{1}{2} x^2
\]
$
    \frac{1}{2} x^2 = \dfrac{1}{2} x^2 =
    \tfrac{1}{2} x^2
$
```

- The package `amsmath` also contains the `cases` and `dcases` environments:

$$F_n = \begin{cases} 0 & n = 0, \\ 1 & n = 1, \\ F_{n-1} + F_{n-2} & n \ge 2. \end{cases}$$

```
\[ F_n =
\begin{cases}
0                 & n = 0, \\
1                 & n = 1, \\
F_{n-1} + F_{n-2} & n \ge 2.
\end{cases}    \]
```

- The $\mathcal{AMS}$ math packages `amsmath`, `amssymb` and `amsthm` extend LaTeX's math capabilities. E.g., compare `\frac` to `\tfrac` and `\dfrac`:

$$\frac{1}{2} x^2 = \dfrac{1}{2} x^2 = \tfrac{1}{2} x^2$$

$\frac{1}{2} x^2 = \dfrac{1}{2} x^2 = \tfrac{1}{2} x^2$

```
\[
   \frac{1}{2} x^2 = \dfrac{1}{2} x^2 =
   \tfrac{1}{2} x^2
\]
$
   \frac{1}{2} x^2 = \dfrac{1}{2} x^2 =
   \tfrac{1}{2} x^2
$
```

- The package `amsmath` also contains the `cases` and `dcases` environments:

$$F_n = \begin{cases} 0 & n = 0, \\ 1 & n = 1, \\ F_{n-1} + F_{n-2} & n \ge 2. \end{cases}$$

```
\[ F_n =
\begin{cases}
0                   & n = 0, \\
1                   & n = 1, \\
F_{n-1} + F_{n-2}   & n \ge 2.
\end{cases}    \]
```

- The $\mathcal{AMS}$ logo can be generated by means of `\AmS` or, if the `hologo` package was loaded, also by means of `\hologo{AmS}`. Similarly, `\hologo{AmSLaTeX}` generates $\mathcal{AMS}$-LaTeX.

UNIV. SALZBURG
COMPUTERWISSENSCHAFTEN

Ready-to-use Packages: SI Units

- The `siunitx` package helps with the correct typesetting of SI-units (and even some non-SI-units): `\SI{10}{\mega\hertz}` generates 10 MHz, and `\SIrange{10}{100}{\hertz}` produces 10 Hz to 100 Hz.

Ready-to-use Packages: SI Units

- The `siunitx` package helps with the correct typesetting of SI-units (and even some non-SI-units): `\SI{10}{\mega\hertz}` generates 10 MHz, and `\SIrange{10}{100}{\hertz}` produces 10 Hz to 100 Hz.
- Similarly: 100° as result of `\ang{100}`, and -2×10^{-5} via `\num{-2e-5}`.

UNIV. SALZBURG
COMPUTERWISSENSCHAFTEN

Ready-to-use Packages: SI Units

- The `siunitx` package helps with the correct typesetting of SI-units (and even some non-SI-units): `\SI{10}{\mega\hertz}` generates 10 MHz, and `\SIrange{10}{100}{\hertz}` produces 10 Hz to 100 Hz.
- Similarly: 100° as result of `\ang{100}`, and -2×10^{-5} via `\num{-2e-5}`.
- The language-specific decimal marker can be set with the option `\sisetup{output-decimal-marker= {,}}`. Compare 3,14 µV m^{-2} to 3.14 µV m^{-2}. Both outputs were generated by means of the command `\SI{3.14}{\micro\volt\per\square\metre}`.

Ready-to-use Packages: SI Units

- The `siunitx` package helps with the correct typesetting of SI-units (and even some non-SI-units): `\SI{10}{\mega\hertz}` generates 10 MHz, and `\SIrange{10}{100}{\hertz}` produces 10 Hz to 100 Hz.
- Similarly: 100° as result of `\ang{100}`, and -2×10^{-5} via `\num{-2e-5}`.
- The language-specific decimal marker can be set with the option `\sisetup{output-decimal-marker= {,}}`. Compare 3,14 μV m^{-2} to 3.14 μV m^{-2}. Both outputs were generated by means of the command `\SI{3.14}{\micro\volt\per\square\metre}`.
- The `siunitx` package also introduces a new column type `S` for the `tabular` environment:

	numbers
α	3.14
β	100.1234
γ	−0.001 234
δ	2×10^{-4}

Ready-to-use Packages: SI Units

- The `siunitx` package helps with the correct typesetting of SI-units (and even some non-SI-units): `\SI{10}{\mega\hertz}` generates 10 MHz, and `\SIrange{10}{100}{\hertz}` produces 10 Hz to 100 Hz.
- Similarly: 100° as result of `\ang{100}`, and -2×10^{-5} via `\num{-2e-5}`.
- The language-specific decimal marker can be set with the option `\sisetup{output-decimal-marker= {,}}`. Compare 3,14 µV m^{-2} to 3.14 µV m^{-2}. Both outputs were generated by means of the command `\SI{3.14}{\micro\volt\per\square\metre}`.
- The `siunitx` package also introduces a new column type `S` for the `tabular` environment:

	numbers
α	3.14
β	100.1234
γ	−0.001 234
δ	2×10^{-4}

```
\begin{tabular}{cS}
  \multicolumn{2}{c}{numbers}\\ \hline
   $\alpha$ & 3.14 \\
   $\beta$  & 100,1234 \\
   $\gamma$ & -0,001234 \\
   $\delta$ & 2e-4
\end{tabular}
```

Ready-to-use Packages: Source-Code Listings

- The `listings` package allows to generate source-code listings:
  `\lstinputlisting[language=C,frame=tb]{code/horner.c}`

```c
/* Horner's Algorithm evaluates a polynomial of degree n at point x
 * @param p: array of n+1 coefficients
 * @param n: the degree of the polynomial
 * @param x: the point of evaluation
 * @return the evaluation result
 */
double evaluate(double *p, int n, double x)
{
  double h = p[n];

  for (int i = n - 1; i >= 0; --i)
    h = x * h + p[i];

  return h;
}
```

Ready-to-use Packages: Source-Code Listings

- The `listings` package allows to generate source-code listings:
  `\lstinputlisting[language=C,frame=tb]{code/horner.c}`

```c
/* Horner's Algorithm evaluates a polynomial of degree n at point x
 * @param p: array of n+1 coefficients
 * @param n: the degree of the polynomial
 * @param x: the point of evaluation
 * @return the evaluation result
 */
double evaluate(double *p, int n, double x)
{
  double h = p[n];

  for (int i = n - 1; i >= 0; --i)
    h = x * h + p[i];

  return h;
}
```

- It supports more than 75 languages, including C/C++, Java, Python and LaTeX.
- Note that the `listings` package comes with many options to influence the style and layout of a listing.

UNIV. SALZBURG
COMPUTERWISSENSCHAFTEN

Ready-to-use Packages: Source-Code Listings

```
\begin{frame}[fragile]\frametitle{Ready-to-use Packages: Source-Code Listings}

\begin{itemize}
\item The \cmd{listings} package allows to generate source-code listings:
  \newline
      % We use \verb to include the LaTeX source code
      \verb+\lstinputlisting[language=C,frame=tb]{code/horner.c}+
\end{itemize}

\lstinputlisting[language=C,frame=tb]{code/horner.c}
\pause

\begin{itemize}
\item It supports more than 75 languages, including C/\Cpp, Java, Python
  and \LaTeX.
\item Note that the \cmd{listings} package comes with many options to
  influence the style and layout of a listing.
\pause
\end{itemize}
\end{frame}
```

UNIV. SALZBURG
COMPUTERWISSENSCHAFTEN

Ready-to-use Packages: Source-Code Listings

```
\begin{frame}[fragile]\frametitle{Ready-to-use Packages: Source-Code Listings}

\begin{itemize}
\item The \cmd{listings} package allows to generate source-code listings:
  \newline
      % We use \verb to include the LaTeX source code
      \verb+\lstinputlisting[language=C,frame=tb]{code/horner.c}+
\end{itemize}

\lstinputlisting[language=C,frame=tb]{code/horner.c}
\pause

\begin{itemize}
\item It supports more than 75 languages, including C/\Cpp, Java, Python
  and \LaTeX.
\item Note that the \cmd{listings} package comes with many options to
  influence the style and layout of a listing.
\pause
\end{itemize}
\end{frame}
```

- That listing of the LaTeX source code which generated the previous slide was obtained by means of the following `listings` commands:

```
\lstinputlisting[language={[latex]tex},frame=single,
                    numbers=none,keywordstyle=\color{red},
                    commentstyle=\color{blue}]{package.tex}
```

Ready-to-use Packages: Pseudocode Listings

- Several LaTeX packages support the formating of pseudocode, such as `program`, `algorithmic` and `algorithm2e`. E.g., with `algorithmic`:

Data: $x, a \in \mathbb{R}$
Result: $y \in \mathbb{R}$
begin
    repeat
        $y \leftarrow \text{Compute}(x, a)$
        done $\leftarrow \text{Check}(x, a)$
        if *not done* **then**
            $a \leftarrow 10 \cdot a$
            reset data structures
        else
            report done;
    until *(done OR* $a > 10^{-10}$*)*

- Several LaTeX packages support the formating of pseudocode, such as `program`, `algorithmic` and `algorithm2e`. E.g., with `algorithmic`:

Data: $x, a \in \mathbb{R}$
Result: $y \in \mathbb{R}$
begin
  repeat
    $y \leftarrow$ Compute(x, a)
    done $\leftarrow$ Check(x, a)
    if *not done* **then**
      $a \leftarrow 10 \cdot a$
      reset data structures
    else
      report done;
  until *(done OR* $a > 10^{-10}$*)*

```
\begin{algorithm}[H]
\DontPrintSemicolon
\KwData{$x,a\in\R$}
\KwResult{$y\in\R$}
\Begin{
  \Repeat{(done ~OR~
           $a > 10^{-10}$)}{
    $y \leftarrow $ Compute$(x,a)$\;
    done $\leftarrow$ Check$(x, a)$\;
    \If{not done}{
      $a \leftarrow 10 \cdot a$\;
      reset data structures\;
    }
    \Else{
      report done;
    }
  }
}
\end{algorithm}
```

Ready-to-use Packages: Latexdiff for Marking Changes to Documents

- The utility `latexdiff` makes it easy to markup and view changes made to a LaTeX document.
- It is a Perl script and requires an installation of Perl 5.8 or higher.

Ready-to-use Packages: Latexdiff for Marking Changes to Documents

- The utility `latexdiff` makes it easy to markup and view changes made to a LaTeX document.
- It is a Perl script and requires an installation of Perl 5.8 or higher.
- To compare two versions of a document, named `old.tex` and `new.tex`, it suffices to run it as follows:

```
latexdiff old.tex new.tex > diff.tex
```

- The markup information is stored in `diff.tex`, which can be processed with any standard LaTeX compiler.

UNIV. SALZBURG
COMPUTERWISSENSCHAFTEN

Ready-to-use Packages: Latexdiff for Marking Changes to Documents

- The utility `latexdiff` makes it easy to markup and view changes made to a LaTeX document.
- It is a Perl script and requires an installation of Perl 5.8 or higher.
- To compare two versions of a document, named `old.tex` and `new.tex`, it suffices to run it as follows:

```
latexdiff old.tex new.tex > diff.tex
```

- The markup information is stored in `diff.tex`, which can be processed with any standard LaTeX compiler.
- Its default set-up is as follows:
  - Words that were removed are crossed out with a single line and colored red.
  - Words that were added are underlined with a squiggle and colored blue.
  - For changed equations, additions are marked with a blue color and removals are marked with a red color.
- Several options to influence how the markup shall be done . . .

UNIV. SALZBURG
COMPUTERWISSENSCHAFTEN

Automated Processing of a LaTeX Document: `latexmk`

- `Latexmk` is a Perl script for automating the processing of a LaTeX document.
- It is a highly specialized sibling of the general-purpose `make` utility.
- It runs LaTeX (and related programs like BibTeX) the appropriate number of times in order to resolve all symbolic references.
- It has a reliable algorithm for detecting dependencies among the input files.

UNIV. SALZBURG
COMPUTERWISSENSCHAFTEN

Automated Processing of a LaTeX Document: `latexmk`

- `Latexmk` is a Perl script for automating the processing of a LaTeX document.
- It is a highly specialized sibling of the general-purpose `make` utility.
- It runs LaTeX (and related programs like BibTeX) the appropriate number of times in order to resolve all symbolic references.
- It has a reliable algorithm for detecting dependencies among the input files.
- It can also be instructed to start a previewer and then run LaTeX whenever a source file has changed.
- It supports the use of PDFTeX for generating a PDF output.

UNIV. SALZBURG
COMPUTERWISSENSCHAFTEN

2 LaTeX for Scientific Text Processing

UNIV. SALZBURG
COMPUTERWISSENSCHAFTEN

Trouble Shooting

- Always remember that LaTeX is nothing but a type setting system that has to rely on your commands.
- For instance, it cannot guess where you meant to insert a parenthesis but forgot to do so!
- Thus, it will bark about any syntactical error that it can detect.

Trouble Shooting

- Always remember that LaTeX is nothing but a type setting system that has to rely on your commands.
- For instance, it cannot guess where you meant to insert a parenthesis but forgot to do so!
- Thus, it will bark about any syntactical error that it can detect.
- Also, note that syntactical correctness need not imply a logical correctness.
- For instance, LaTeX will be perfectly happy to set an entire book in `\tiny` type size, which may be different from what you intended to do.

Trouble Shooting Guidelines

1. Consult the LaTeX Book and the LaTeX Companion. (Yes, indeed: RTFM!)

UNIV. SALZBURG
COMPUTERWISSENSCHAFTEN

Trouble Shooting Guidelines

1. Consult the LaTeX Book and the LaTeX Companion. (Yes, indeed: RTFM!)
2. Make sure that all parentheses occur in matching pairs. It is good practice to enter `{ }` prior to entering anything between the parentheses. (Some editors support this and will automatically re-position the cursor.)

UNIV. SALZBURG
COMPUTERWISSENSCHAFTEN

Trouble Shooting Guidelines

1. Consult the LaTeX Book and the LaTeX Companion. (Yes, indeed: RTFM!)
2. Make sure that all parentheses occur in matching pairs. It is good practice to enter `{}` prior to entering anything between the parentheses. (Some editors support this and will automatically re-position the cursor.)
3. Make sure that all `\begin` and `\end` commands occur in matching pairs. (Again, some editors support an easy entering of environment names.)

Trouble Shooting Guidelines

1. Consult the LaTeX Book and the LaTeX Companion. (Yes, indeed: RTFM!)
2. Make sure that all parentheses occur in matching pairs. It is good practice to enter `{}` prior to entering anything between the parentheses. (Some editors support this and will automatically re-position the cursor.)
3. Make sure that all `\begin` and `\end` commands occur in matching pairs. (Again, some editors support an easy entering of environment names.)
4. Similarly, all math delimiters need to occur in matching pairs.
5. Rerun LaTeX frequently. The load that it will place on the CPU is no issue with modern computers, but it will help you tremendously when attempting to locate problems.

Trouble Shooting Guidelines

1. Consult the LaTeX Book and the LaTeX Companion. (Yes, indeed: RTFM!)
2. Make sure that all parentheses occur in matching pairs. It is good practice to enter `{}` prior to entering anything between the parentheses. (Some editors support this and will automatically re-position the cursor.)
3. Make sure that all `\begin` and `\end` commands occur in matching pairs. (Again, some editors support an easy entering of environment names.)
4. Similarly, all math delimiters need to occur in matching pairs.
5. Rerun LaTeX frequently. The load that it will place on the CPU is no issue with modern computers, but it will help you tremendously when attempting to locate problems.
6. At all positions where one space or empty line is allowed, several spaces and empty lines are allowed. It will help your first attempts to locate a problem if your LaTeX file is formatted neatly!

Trouble Shooting Guidelines

1. Consult the LaTeX Book and the LaTeX Companion. (Yes, indeed: RTFM!)
2. Make sure that all parentheses occur in matching pairs. It is good practice to enter `{}` prior to entering anything between the parentheses. (Some editors support this and will automatically re-position the cursor.)
3. Make sure that all `\begin` and `\end` commands occur in matching pairs. (Again, some editors support an easy entering of environment names.)
4. Similarly, all math delimiters need to occur in matching pairs.
5. Rerun LaTeX frequently. The load that it will place on the CPU is no issue with modern computers, but it will help you tremendously when attempting to locate problems.
6. At all positions where one space or empty line is allowed, several spaces and empty lines are allowed. It will help your first attempts to locate a problem if your LaTeX file is formatted neatly!
7. Recall that a % sign starts a comment for LaTeX, and that it will ignore the rest of the line.

UNIV. SALZBURG
COMPUTERWISSENSCHAFTEN

3 Drafting Figures and Generating Plots

- LaTeX and PostScript
- Drafting Packages
- Utilities
- Plotting

UNIV. SALZBURG
COMPUTERWISSENSCHAFTEN

3 Drafting Figures and Generating Plots

- LaTeX and PostScript
  - Drawing Figures in LaTeX
  - LaTeX Packages for Generating Special-Purpose Illustrations
  - PostScript
- Drafting Packages
- Utilities
- Plotting

UNIV. SALZBURG
COMPUTERWISSENSCHAFTEN

- Simple figures can be generated using the *picture* environment of LaTeX:
  `\begin{picture}(`*width*`,`*height*`)(`*x-lower_left*`,`*y-lower_left*`)`
  `\end{picture}`
  with all coordinates being expressed in terms of `\unitlength`.
- The unit length can be set using the command `\setlength`. E.g., the following command sets the unit length to 5*mm*:
  `\setlength{\unitlength}{5mm}`.
- `(`*x-lower_left*`,`*y-lower_left*`)` specifies the coordinates of the lower-left corner of the picture. If absent, the lower-left corner has coordinates `(0,0)`.
- Two standard line widths are available within the picture environment: `\thinlines` and `\thicklines`.

Drawing Figures with LaTeX

- The `\begin{picture}` command puts LaTeX into *picture mode*. The only things that can appear inside the picture environment are the commands `\put`, `\multiput`, `\qbezier`, and `\graphpaper`, and declarations such as `\thicklines`.
- The basic command for drawing is the `\put` command:
  `\put(`*x-coord*`,`*y-coord*`)`{*picture object*}.

Drawing Figures with LaTeX

- The `\begin{picture}` command puts LaTeX into *picture mode*. The only things that can appear inside the picture environment are the commands `\put`, `\multiput`, `\qbezier`, and `\graphpaper`, and declarations such as `\thicklines`.
- The basic command for drawing is the `\put` command:
  `\put(`*x-coord*`,`*y-coord*`){`*picture object*`}`.
- Valid picture objects are text, (dashed) boxes, lines, arrows, (filled) circles, ovals:
  - `\put(`*x-coord*`,`*y-coord*`){`*my_text*`}`
  - `\put(`*x-coord*`,`*y-coord*`){\framebox(`*width*`,`*height*`){`*my_text*`}}`
  - `\put(`*x-coord*`,`*y-coord*`){\line(`*x-dir*`,`*y-dir*`){`*length*`}}`
  - `\put(`*x-coord*`,`*y-coord*`){\vector(`*x-dir*`,`*y-dir*`){`*length*`}}`
  - `\put(`*x-coord*`,`*y-coord*`){\circle{`*radius*`}}`
  - `\put(`*x-coord*`,`*y-coord*`){\oval(`*width*`,`*height*`)}`

UNIV. SALZBURG
COMPUTERWISSENSCHAFTEN

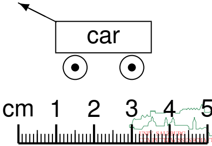
- The `\begin{picture}` command puts LaTeX into *picture mode*. The only things that can appear inside the picture environment are the commands `\put`, `\multiput`, `\qbezier`, and `\graphpaper`, and declarations such as `\thicklines`.
- The basic command for drawing is the `\put` command:
  `\put(`*x-coord*`,`*y-coord*`){`*picture object*`}`.
- Valid picture objects are text, (dashed) boxes, lines, arrows, (filled) circles, ovals:
  - `\put(`*x-coord*`,`*y-coord*`){`*my_text*`}`
  - `\put(`*x-coord*`,`*y-coord*`){\framebox(`*width*`,`*height*`){`*my_text*`}}`
  - `\put(`*x-coord*`,`*y-coord*`){\line(`*x-dir*`,`*y-dir*`){`*length*`}}`
  - `\put(`*x-coord*`,`*y-coord*`){\vector(`*x-dir*`,`*y-dir*`){`*length*`}}`
  - `\put(`*x-coord*`,`*y-coord*`){\circle{`*radius*`}}`
  - `\put(`*x-coord*`,`*y-coord*`){\oval(`*width*`,`*height*`)}`
- The reference point of a box is its lower-left corner.
- The box-drawing commands take one or two additional optional arguments for specifying the position of the text relative to the box: `l` (left), `r` (right), `t` (top), `b` (bottom). The default is to center the text horizontally and vertically within the box.

- The `\begin{picture}` command puts LaTeX into *picture mode*. The only things that can appear inside the picture environment are the commands `\put`, `\multiput`, `\qbezier`, and `\graphpaper`, and declarations such as `\thicklines`.
- The basic command for drawing is the `\put` command:
  `\put(`*x-coord*`,`*y-coord*`){`*picture object*`}`.
- Valid picture objects are text, (dashed) boxes, lines, arrows, (filled) circles, ovals:
  `\put(`*x-coord*`,`*y-coord*`){`*my_text*`}`
  `\put(`*x-coord*`,`*y-coord*`){\framebox(`*width*`,`*height*`){`*my_text*`}}`
  `\put(`*x-coord*`,`*y-coord*`){\line(`*x-dir*`,`*y-dir*`){`*length*`}}`
  `\put(`*x-coord*`,`*y-coord*`){\vector(`*x-dir*`,`*y-dir*`){`*length*`}}`
  `\put(`*x-coord*`,`*y-coord*`){\circle{`*radius*`}}`
  `\put(`*x-coord*`,`*y-coord*`){\oval(`*width*`,`*height*`)}`
- The reference point of a box is its lower-left corner.
- The box-drawing commands take one or two additional optional arguments for specifying the position of the text relative to the box: `l` (left), `r` (right), `t` (top), `b` (bottom). The default is to center the text horizontally and vertically within the box.
- Objects can be saved by means of the `\savebox` and reused with the `\usebox` command.
- Repeated patterns can be generated with the `\multiput` command.

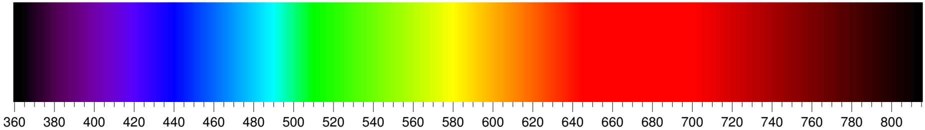
UNIV. SALZBURG
COMPUTERWISSENSCHAFTEN

Sample LaTeX Picture

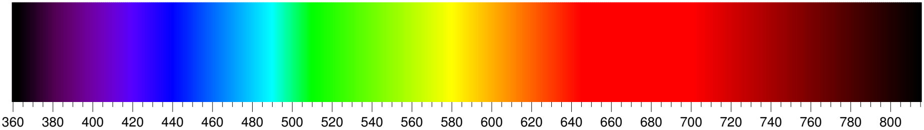
```
\newcounter{cms}
\setlength{\unitlength}{1.5mm}
\begin{center}
  \begin{picture}(50,39)
    \put(0,7){\makebox(0,0)[b]{cm}}
    \multiput(10,7)(10,0){5}
      {\addtocounter{cms}{1}\makebox(0,0)[b]{\arabic{cms}}}
    \put(15,20){\circle{6}}
    \put(30,20){\circle{6}}
    \put(15,20){\circle*{2}}
    \put(30,20){\circle*{2}}
    \put(10,24){\framebox(25,8){car}}
    \put(10,32){\vector(-2,1){10}}
    \multiput(1,0)(1,0){49}{\line(0,1){2.5}}
    \multiput(5,0)(10,0){5}{\line(0,1){3.5}}
    \thicklines
    \multiput(0,0)(10,0){6}{\line(0,1){5}}
    \put(0,0){\line(1,0){50}}
  \end{picture}
\end{center}
```



Sample LaTeX Picture Based on xcolor Package



Sample LaTeX Picture Based on xcolor Package



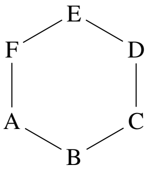

```
\newcount\WL \unitlength.75pt
\begin{picture}(460,60)(355,-10)
  \sffamily \tiny \linethickness{1.25\unitlength} \WL=360
  \multiput(360,0)(1,0){456}%
  {{\color[wave]{\the\WL}\line(0,1){50}}\global\advance\WL1}
  \linethickness{0.25\unitlength}\WL=360
  \multiput(360,0)(20,0){23}%
  {\picture(0,0)
    \line(0,-1){5} \multiput(5,0)(5,0){3}{\line(0,-1){2.5}}
    \put(0,-10){\makebox(0,0){\the\WL}}\global\advance\WL20
  \endpicture}
\end{picture}
```

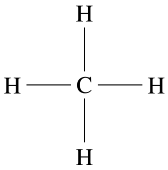
- LaTeX provides several ready-to-use packages for creating illustrations for specific applications.

LaTeX Packages for Generating Special-Purpose Figures: Chemistry

- LaTeX provides several ready-to-use packages for creating illustrations for specific applications.
- E.g., the `chemfig` packages allows to draw chemical structures:

```
\chemfig{A*6(-B-C-D-E-F-)}
\chemfig{C(-[:0]H)(-[:90]H)(-[:180]H)(-[:270]H)}
```

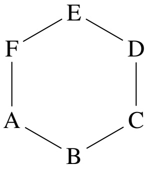


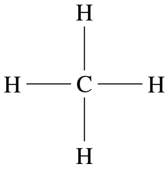


LaTeX Packages for Generating Special-Purpose Figures: Chemistry

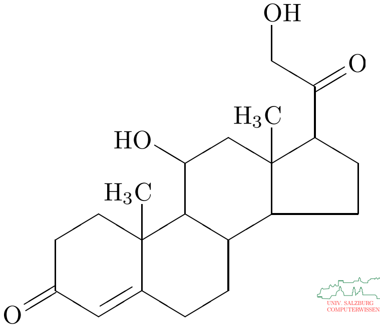
- LaTeX provides several ready-to-use packages for creating illustrations for specific applications.
- E.g., the `chemfig` packages allows to draw chemical structures:

```
\chemfig{A*6(-B-C-D-E-F-)}
\chemfig{C(-[:0]H)(-[:90]H)(-[:180]H)(-[:270]H)}
```





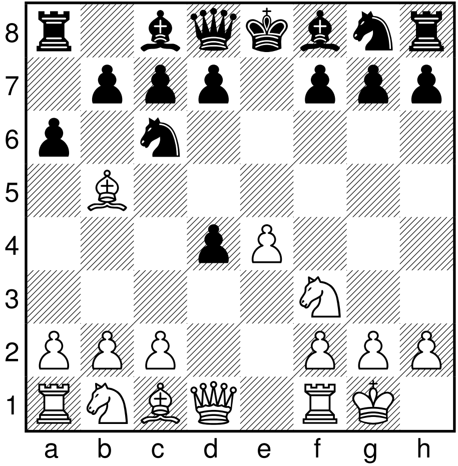
- A representation of Corticosterone, which is a 21-carbon steroid hormone produced in the cortex of the adrenal glands, can be generated by means of the `carom` package.



- The following chessboard was produced by means of `skak` commands:

```
\newgame\mainline{1.e4 e5 2.Nf3 Nc6 3.d4 e5xd4 4.Bb5 a6 5.O-O}
\showboard
```

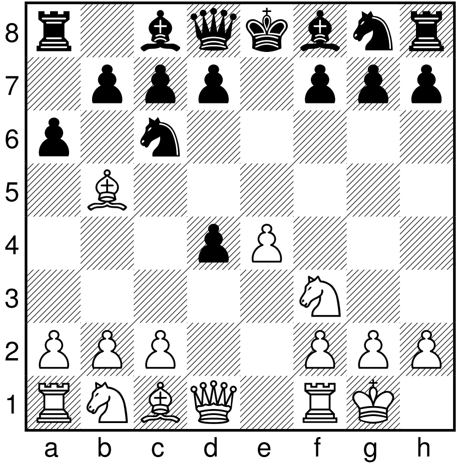
1 e4 e5 2 ♘f3 ♘c6 3 d4 e×d4 4 ♗b5 a6 5 O-O



- The following chessboard was produced by means of `skak` commands:

```
\newgame\mainline{1.e4 e5 2.Nf3 Nc6 3.d4 e5xd4 4.Bb5 a6 5.O-O}
\showboard
```

1 e4 e5 2 ♘f3 ♘c6 3 d4 e×d4 4 ♗b5 a6 5 O-O



- Note that `skak` (Danish for chess) is able to handle the Forsyth-Edwards Notation (FEN), which is the standard notation for describing a specific board position of a chess game.

PostScript

- Designed by Adobe, Inc. in 1982, and documented in the PostScript Language Reference Manual (“The Red Book”) in 1985.
- PostScript (PS) is a device-independent *Page Description Language* (PDL) and has become a de-facto industrial standard. (It also has many elements of a Printer Control Language.)

- Designed by Adobe, Inc. in 1982, and documented in the PostScript Language Reference Manual ("The Red Book") in 1985.
- PostScript (PS) is a device-independent *Page Description Language* (PDL) and has become a de-facto industrial standard. (It also has many elements of a Printer Control Language.)
- It is a *stack-oriented* programming language that relies on *reverse Polish notation* (RPN):

C:	sqrt ((3 $*$ 3) + (4 $*$ 4))
Lisp:	(sqrt (+ ($*$ 3 3) ($*$ 4 4)))
PostScript:	3 3 mul 4 4 mul add sqrt

PostScript

- Designed by Adobe, Inc. in 1982, and documented in the PostScript Language Reference Manual (“The Red Book”) in 1985.
- PostScript (PS) is a device-independent *Page Description Language* (PDL) and has become a de-facto industrial standard. (It also has many elements of a Printer Control Language.)
- It is a *stack-oriented* programming language that relies on *reverse Polish notation* (RPN):

C:	sqrt ((3 $*$ 3) + (4 $*$ 4))
Lisp:	(sqrt (+ ($*$ 3 3) ($*$ 4 4)))
PostScript:	3 3 mul 4 4 mul add sqrt

- Standard procedural (e.g., C, Ada) or functional (e.g., LISP) programming languages need parentheses in order to specify the order of execution of the clauses. PS needs no parentheses since its stack accumulates intermediate results, and the order of execution is always defined by the order in which the operations are pushed onto the stack.
- Most programming languages use stacks internally. However, in general a user has no direct access to them.

- The following function takes a Fahrenheit temperature and returns the corresponding Celsius temperature:

C:	int f2c (int t) { return ((t - 32) ∗ 5 / 9); }
Lisp:	(defun f2c (t) (/ (∗ 5 (- t 32)) 9))
PostScript:	/f2c { 32 sub 5 mul 9 div } def

- PS features polymorphic operators and late binding. It is weakly typed.

UNIV. SALZBURG
COMPUTERWISSENSCHAFTEN

Sample PostScript Code

- The following PS code produces a shadowed PS logo:

```
/Times-Italic findfont 100 scalefont setfont

/PrintPS
{ 0 0 moveto
  (PostScript) show
} def

100 400 translate
.95 -0.05 0
{ setgray PrintPS -1.5 0.7 translate} for
1 setgray PrintPS

showpage
```

UNIV. SALZBURG
COMPUTERWISSENSCHAFTEN


PostScript

PostScript Document Structuring Conventions

- A raw PS file lacks any easy-to-understand logical structure.
- Adobe specified the "*PostScript Document Structuring Conventions*" (DSC) for providing additional structural data in a PS file.
- A PS file is called conforming if it adheres to Adobe's DSC.
- In general, every application that generates PS output is expected to conform to Adobe's DSC.

PostScript Document Structuring Conventions

- A raw PS file lacks any easy-to-understand logical structure.
- Adobe specified the "*PostScript Document Structuring Conventions*" (DSC) for providing additional structural data in a PS file.
- A PS file is called conforming if it adheres to Adobe's DSC.
- In general, every application that generates PS output is expected to conform to Adobe's DSC.
- A line of DSC data is marked by %% or %! in the first two characters of the line. (%! is the so-called "file magic"; it may only appear in the very first line of a PS file.)
- The DSC data is partitioned into header comments, body comments, and trailer comments.

PostScript Document Structuring Conventions

- Here comes (part of) the header of a PS file generated by LaTeX and `dvips`:

```
%!PS-Adobe-2.0
%%Creator: dvips(k) 5.993 Copyright 2013 ...
%%Title: drafting.dvi
%%Pages: 11
%%PageOrder: Ascend
%%BoundingBox: 0 0 596 842
%%DocumentPaperSizes: A4
%%EndComments
```

- Individual pages of a multi-page PS document are marked by `%%Page:` (followed by the page number).

Encapsulated PostScript

- Encapsulated PostScript files (EPS) are used for including PS data into an other PS applications (such as LaTeX).
- What turns an ordinary PS file into an EPS file is the BoundingBox, i.e., data that describes where the figure sits on the page.
- It is specified by four numbers: The x, y-coordinates of the lower-left corner of the figure, followed by the x, y-coordinates of the upper-right corner of the image.

UNIV. SALZBURG
COMPUTERWISSENSCHAFTEN

Encapsulated PostScript

- Encapsulated PostScript files (EPS) are used for including PS data into an other PS applications (such as LaTeX).
- What turns an ordinary PS file into an EPS file is the BoundingBox, i.e., data that describes where the figure sits on the page.
- It is specified by four numbers: The x, y-coordinates of the lower-left corner of the figure, followed by the x, y-coordinates of the upper-right corner of the image. E.g.,

  ```
  %%BoundingBox:  0 0 453 216.
  ```

  In this example, the figure sits right down in the bottom left-hand corner of the page. The numbers are points with 1pt = 1/72 inches. So, this figure is about 6 inches wide and 3 inches high.
- The BoundingBox information typically resides in the first few lines of an EPS file.

UNIV. SALZBURG
COMPUTERWISSENSCHAFTEN

Encapsulated PostScript

- Encapsulated PostScript files (EPS) are used for including PS data into an other PS applications (such as LaTeX).
- What turns an ordinary PS file into an EPS file is the BoundingBox, i.e., data that describes where the figure sits on the page.
- It is specified by four numbers: The x, y-coordinates of the lower-left corner of the figure, followed by the x, y-coordinates of the upper-right corner of the image. E.g.,

  `%%BoundingBox: 0 0 453 216.`

  In this example, the figure sits right down in the bottom left-hand corner of the page. The numbers are points with 1pt = 1/72 inches. So, this figure is about 6 inches wide and 3 inches high.
- The BoundingBox information typically resides in the first few lines of an EPS file.
- If you view a PS image with `ghostview`, the x, y-coordinates are displayed as you move the mouse to point at different parts of the image. Also, `ghostview` will display only the portion of the page described by the file's BoundingBox line. Thus, you can use `ghostview` to help you edit the BoundingBox line and to view the results.

Encapsulated PostScript

- Encapsulated PostScript files (EPS) are used for including PS data into an other PS applications (such as LaTeX).
- What turns an ordinary PS file into an EPS file is the BoundingBox, i.e., data that describes where the figure sits on the page.
- It is specified by four numbers: The x, y-coordinates of the lower-left corner of the figure, followed by the x, y-coordinates of the upper-right corner of the image. E.g.,

  ```
  %%BoundingBox:  0 0 453 216.
  ```

  In this example, the figure sits right down in the bottom left-hand corner of the page. The numbers are points with 1pt = 1/72 inches. So, this figure is about 6 inches wide and 3 inches high.
- The BoundingBox information typically resides in the first few lines of an EPS file.
- If you view a PS image with `ghostview`, the x, y-coordinates are displayed as you move the mouse to point at different parts of the image. Also, `ghostview` will display only the portion of the page described by the file's BoundingBox line. Thus, you can use `ghostview` to help you edit the BoundingBox line and to view the results.
- An EPS need not include the PS command "showpage", which is the cue to a printer to actually print the page. Thus, an EPS file need not print by itself!

UNIV. SALZBURG
COMPUTERWISSENSCHAFTEN

LaTeX and Encapsulated PostScript

- When TeX was implemented, PS and other graphics formats (like JPEG) did not exist. Thus, TeX does not have direct support for importing graphics.
- However, TeX allows DVI files to contain `\special` commands directed at programs that use DVI files.
- Since DVI files are most often converted to PS, the best supported format for imported graphics is EPS.

LaTeX and Encapsulated PostScript

- When TeX was implemented, PS and other graphics formats (like JPEG) did not exist. Thus, TeX does not have direct support for importing graphics.
- However, TeX allows DVI files to contain `\special` commands directed at programs that use DVI files.
- Since DVI files are most often converted to PS, the best supported format for imported graphics is EPS.
- With the release of LaTeX 2$_\varepsilon$, the “LaTeX graphics bundle” was also released.
- The graphics bundle contains the “standard” `graphics` package and the “extended” `graphicx` package.
- Both packages offer roughly the same functionality, although the `graphicx` package is widely regarded as more user-friendly and slightly more efficient.

UNIV. SALZBURG
COMPUTERWISSENSCHAFTEN

- A file `foo.eps` can be included into a LaTeX document by using the `\includegraphics` command as follows:

  `\includegraphics[`*options*`]{`*foo.eps*`}`

  Typical options are the specification of a *height* or *width* of the graphics. E.g., `[width=3in]` requests the graphics to be scaled such that its total width is three inches.

LaTeX and Encapsulated PostScript

- A file `foo.eps` can be included into a LaTeX document by using the `\includegraphics` command as follows:

  `\includegraphics[`*options*`]{`*foo.eps*`}`

  Typical options are the specification of a *height* or *width* of the graphics. E.g., `[width=3in]` requests the graphics to be scaled such that its total width is three inches.
- Any of the units accepted by LaTeX can be used for specifying dimensions: pt, in, cm, mm, ...
- Instead of making the width be a fixed length (such as three inches), it may be better to make the width dependent upon `\textwidth` (or upon `\em`).

UNIV. SALZBURG
COMPUTERWISSENSCHAFTEN

LaTeX and Encapsulated PostScript

- A file `foo.eps` can be included into a LaTeX document by using the `\includegraphics` command as follows:

  `\includegraphics[`*options*`]{`*foo.eps*`}`

  Typical options are the specification of a *height* or *width* of the graphics. E.g., `[width=3in]` requests the graphics to be scaled such that its total width is three inches.
- Any of the units accepted by LaTeX can be used for specifying dimensions: pt, in, cm, mm, ...
- Instead of making the width be a fixed length (such as three inches), it may be better to make the width dependent upon `\textwidth` (or upon `\em`).
- Other options allow to rotate the graphics about a specified origin, to clip it to a viewing area, and to specify a bounding box of the graphics.

UNIV. SALZBURG
COMPUTERWISSENSCHAFTEN

LaTeX and Encapsulated PostScript

- A file `foo.eps` can be included into a LaTeX document by using the `\includegraphics` command as follows:

  `\includegraphics[`*options*`]{`*foo.eps*`}`

  Typical options are the specification of a *height* or *width* of the graphics. E.g., `[width=3in]` requests the graphics to be scaled such that its total width is three inches.
- Any of the units accepted by LaTeX can be used for specifying dimensions: pt, in, cm, mm, . . .
- Instead of making the width be a fixed length (such as three inches), it may be better to make the width dependent upon `\textwidth` (or upon `\em`).
- Other options allow to rotate the graphics about a specified origin, to clip it to a viewing area, and to specify a bounding box of the graphics.
- Note that `\includegraphics` does not end a paragraph. Thus, small symbols can be included into the running text.

UNIV. SALZBURG
COMPUTERWISSENSCHAFTEN

LaTeX and Encapsulated PostScript

- Single-page PS files can be converted to an EPS file by means of the `ps2epsi` utility distributed with Ghostscript. In particular, it will create information on the bounding box of the PS graphics.
- Note, however, that any such PS file may not contain instructions that change the global appearance of the document that includes it. E.g., commands like `erasepage`, `stop` or `a4` are not permitted in an EPS file.

LaTeX and Encapsulated PostScript

- Single-page PS files can be converted to an EPS file by means of the `ps2epsi` utility distributed with Ghostscript. In particular, it will create information on the bounding box of the PS graphics.
- Note, however, that any such PS file may not contain instructions that change the global appearance of the document that includes it. E.g., commands like `erasepage`, `stop` or `a4` are not permitted in an EPS file.
- Watch for non-standard EPS files! For instance, Mathematica developed its own “improved” flavor of PS.
- Some of those trouble makers, including Mathematica output, can be cleaned with the `psfix` utility (on Unix systems).

UNIV. SALZBURG
COMPUTERWISSENSCHAFTEN

LaTeX and Encapsulated PostScript

- Single-page PS files can be converted to an EPS file by means of the `ps2epsi` utility distributed with Ghostscript. In particular, it will create information on the bounding box of the PS graphics.
- Note, however, that any such PS file may not contain instructions that change the global appearance of the document that includes it. E.g., commands like `erasepage`, `stop` or `a4` are not permitted in an EPS file.
- Watch for non-standard EPS files! For instance, Mathematica developed its own "improved" flavor of PS.
- Some of those trouble makers, including Mathematica output, can be cleaned with the `psfix` utility (on Unix systems).
- Also, note that the proper inclusion of EPS files into LaTeX requires the use of compatible DVI drivers and previewers.
- Normally, `xdvi`, `dvips`, and Ghostscript/Ghostview do not cause any troubles when handling EPS files included into a LaTeX document.
- On systems that support pipes, the `graphicx` package can also be used to include compressed and non-EPS graphics files.

3 Drafting Figures and Generating Plots

- LaTeX and PostScript
- Drafting Packages
  - TGIF
  - Ipe
- Utilities
- Plotting

TGIF

- `Tgif` is an Xlib-based interactive 2D *drawing tool* that allows the user to draw and manipulate objects under the X Window System.
- `Tgif` supports the hierarchical construction of drawings, and an easy navigation between sets of drawings.
- It is also a hyper-graphics editor/browser on the WWW.
- `Tgif` is purely based on Xlib. It requires a three-button mouse.
- The source code for `tgif` is freely available on the WWW.
- `Tgif` is free for non-commercial applications.

TGIF

- `Tgif` is an Xlib-based interactive 2D *drawing tool* that allows the user to draw and manipulate objects under the X Window System.
- `Tgif` supports the hierarchical construction of drawings, and an easy navigation between sets of drawings.
- It is also a hyper-graphics editor/browser on the WWW.
- `Tgif` is purely based on Xlib. It requires a three-button mouse.
- The source code for `tgif` is freely available on the WWW.
- `Tgif` is free for non-commercial applications.
- `Tgif` supports a variety of primitive objects.
- Objects can be grouped together to form a *grouped* object.
- Commands applied to a grouped object are applied to all sub-objects of the group.
- Typically, `tgif` objects are stored in files with an .obj extension (referred to as an *object file*). (So-called "building-block" objects are stored in files with a `.sym` extension (referred to as a *symbol file*).)
- Both types of files are stored in the form of Prolog facts. Prolog code can be written to interpret the drawings!

TGIF File Input/Output

- `Tgif` can generate output in several different formats:
  - PS,
  - EPS,
  - PDF (needs `ps2pdf` from the `ghostscript` package),
  - X11 bitmap (XBM), or XPM for color output),
  - plain ASCII text.

UNIV. SALZBURG
COMPUTERWISSENSCHAFTEN

- `Tgif` can generate output in several different formats:
  - PS,
  - EPS,
  - PDF (needs `ps2pdf` from the `ghostscript` package),
  - X11 bitmap (XBM), or XPM for color output),
  - plain ASCII text.
- X11 bitmap files, certain forms of X11 pixmap files (such as the one generated by `tgif`), and EPS can be imported into `tgif` and can be represented as `tgif` primitive objects.

TGIF File Input/Output

- `Tgif` can generate output in several different formats:
  - PS,
  - EPS,
  - PDF (needs `ps2pdf` from the `ghostscript` package),
  - X11 bitmap (XBM), or XPM for color output),
  - plain ASCII text.
- X11 bitmap files, certain forms of X11 pixmap files (such as the one generated by `tgif`), and EPS can be imported into `tgif` and can be represented as `tgif` primitive objects.
- Files in other raster formats (e.g, PNG, JPEG, TIFF, etc.) can also be imported into and exported from `tgif` if external tools can be used to convert them into X11 XBM/XPM files.
- `Tgif` can capture (portions of) a screen and input it as a `tgif` object.

TGIF File Input/Output

- Tgif can generate output in several different formats:
  - PS,
  - EPS,
  - PDF (needs ps2pdf from the ghostscript package),
  - X11 bitmap (XBM), or XPM for color output),
  - plain ASCII text.
- X11 bitmap files, certain forms of X11 pixmap files (such as the one generated by tgif), and EPS can be imported into tgif and can be represented as tgif primitive objects.
- Files in other raster formats (e.g, PNG, JPEG, TIFF, etc.) can also be imported into and exported from tgif if external tools can be used to convert them into X11 XBM/XPM files.
- Tgif can capture (portions of) a screen and input it as a tgif object.
- By default, tgif drawings are formatted for printing on letter-size paper. Tgif offers a compile-time flag in order to make DIN A4 the default paper size.

Ipe

- Ipe is a drawing editor that generates drawings in XML, PDF or EPS format.
- Ipe is particularly geared towards making sophisticated 2D figures that serve as illustrations of geometric concepts and algorithms.
- It offers most standard features of a drafting package, plus a few “CAD-like” features.

Ipe

- Ipe is a drawing editor that generates drawings in XML, PDF or EPS format.
- Ipe is particularly geared towards making sophisticated 2D figures that serve as illustrations of geometric concepts and algorithms.
- It offers most standard features of a drafting package, plus a few “CAD-like” features.
- Users can provide Ipelets (Ipe plug-ins) to add functionality to Ipe. This way, Ipe can be extended for each task at hand.

Ipe

- Ipe is a drawing editor that generates drawings in XML, PDF or EPS format.
- Ipe is particularly geared towards making sophisticated 2D figures that serve as illustrations of geometric concepts and algorithms.
- It offers most standard features of a drafting package, plus a few “CAD-like” features.
- Users can provide Ipelets (Ipe plug-ins) to add functionality to Ipe. This way, Ipe can be extended for each task at hand.
- The Ipe interface allows keyboard shortcuts which (mostly) are equivalent to the shortcuts of Emacs.
- Objects supported include (poly)lines, polygons, splines, splinegons, circles and ellipses, circular arcs, rectangles, and marks. Bitmaps are supported, too.

UNIV. SALZBURG
COMPUTERWISSENSCHAFTEN

Ipe

- Ipe is a drawing editor that generates drawings in XML, PDF or EPS format.
- Ipe is particularly geared towards making sophisticated 2D figures that serve as illustrations of geometric concepts and algorithms.
- It offers most standard features of a drafting package, plus a few “CAD-like” features.
- Users can provide Ipelets (Ipe plug-ins) to add functionality to Ipe. This way, Ipe can be extended for each task at hand.
- The Ipe interface allows keyboard shortcuts which (mostly) are equivalent to the shortcuts of Emacs.
- Objects supported include (poly)lines, polygons, splines, splinegons, circles and ellipses, circular arcs, rectangles, and marks. Bitmaps are supported, too.
- Ipe is written in standard C++ using the STL.
- The GUI is implemented using the portable toolkit Qt, and, thus, can be compiled for Unix, Windows, and Mac OS X.
- Ipe 5.0 had gained a reputation of being difficult to compile. Those problems became irrelevant when Ipe 6.0 made its debut. (Currently, we have Ipe 7.x.)

Ipe

- Ipe is a drawing editor that generates drawings in XML, PDF or EPS format.
- Ipe is particularly geared towards making sophisticated 2D figures that serve as illustrations of geometric concepts and algorithms.
- It offers most standard features of a drafting package, plus a few "CAD-like" features.
- Users can provide Ipelets (Ipe plug-ins) to add functionality to Ipe. This way, Ipe can be extended for each task at hand.
- The Ipe interface allows keyboard shortcuts which (mostly) are equivalent to the shortcuts of Emacs.
- Objects supported include (poly)lines, polygons, splines, splinegons, circles and ellipses, circular arcs, rectangles, and marks. Bitmaps are supported, too.
- Ipe is written in standard C++ using the STL.
- The GUI is implemented using the portable toolkit Qt, and, thus, can be compiled for Unix, Windows, and Mac OS X.
- Ipe 5.0 had gained a reputation of being difficult to compile. Those problems became irrelevant when Ipe 6.0 made its debut. (Currently, we have Ipe 7.x.)
- Ipe is free software.

- It is easy to align objects with respect to each other by using various snapping modes.

Ipe's Main Features

- It is easy to align objects with respect to each other by using various snapping modes.
- Text is entered as LaTeX source code, and displayed in the display as it will appear in the figure.
- The text model is based on Unicode, and has been tested with Korean, Chinese, and Japanese. German "Umlaut" are supported.

UNIV. SALZBURG
COMPUTERWISSENSCHAFTEN

Ipe's Main Features

- It is easy to align objects with respect to each other by using various snapping modes.
- Text is entered as LaTeX source code, and displayed in the display as it will appear in the figure.
- The text model is based on Unicode, and has been tested with Korean, Chinese, and Japanese. German "Umlaut" are supported.
- Ipe can input/output (its own extension of) EPS and PDF files, which are readily included into LaTeX by the same means as any other EPS/PDF documents are included.
- It embeds its own information very cleverly such that those files are regarded as perfectly valid files by, say, `gv` or `acroread`.

- It is easy to align objects with respect to each other by using various snapping modes.
- Text is entered as LaTeX source code, and displayed in the display as it will appear in the figure.
- The text model is based on Unicode, and has been tested with Korean, Chinese, and Japanese. German "Umlaut" are supported.
- Ipe can input/output (its own extension of) EPS and PDF files, which are readily included into LaTeX by the same means as any other EPS/PDF documents are included.
- It embeds its own information very cleverly such that those files are regarded as perfectly valid files by, say, `gv` or `acroread`.
- Ipe can also input/output XML tags stored in an `.ipe` file. Its document type definition (DTD) is given by `ipe.dtd`.
- Ipe XML files are the means of choice for generating input for Ipe by XML-aware applications.

Ipe's Main Features

- It is easy to align objects with respect to each other by using various snapping modes.
- Text is entered as LaTeX source code, and displayed in the display as it will appear in the figure.
- The text model is based on Unicode, and has been tested with Korean, Chinese, and Japanese. German "Umlaut" are supported.
- Ipe can input/output (its own extension of) EPS and PDF files, which are readily included into LaTeX by the same means as any other EPS/PDF documents are included.
- It embeds its own information very cleverly such that those files are regarded as perfectly valid files by, say, `gv` or `acroread`.
- Ipe can also input/output XML tags stored in an `.ipe` file. Its document type definition (DTD) is given by `ipe.dtd`.
- Ipe XML files are the means of choice for generating input for Ipe by XML-aware applications.
- Importing PDF files: `pdftoipe`.

UNIV. SALZBURG
COMPUTERWISSENSCHAFTEN

Special Features of Ipe

- Ipe is extendible. One can easily interface personal editing functions, so-called *Ipe extensions* or *Ipe User Macros* (IUMs), with Ipe.

UNIV. SALZBURG
COMPUTERWISSENSCHAFTEN

Special Features of Ipe

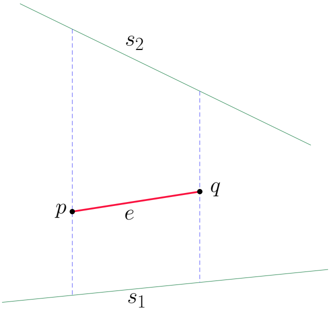
- Ipe is extendible. One can easily interface personal editing functions, so-called *Ipe extensions* or *Ipe User Macros* (IUMs), with Ipe.
- One of the nicest features of Ipe is the possibility to have the mouse *snap* to other objects. That is, the user can make certain objects in the drawing canvas *magnetic*, which makes it very easy to align an object under construction to other objects.
- If the cursor is too far away from the nearest interesting object then the cursor will not snap. The snapping threshold can be changed in Ipe's configuration window.

Special Features of Ipe

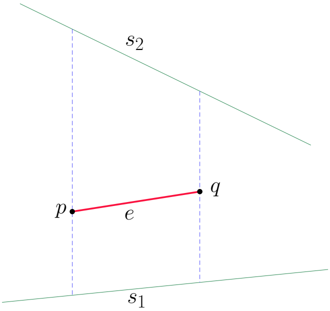
- Ipe is extendible. One can easily interface personal editing functions, so-called *Ipe extensions* or *Ipe User Macros* (IUMs), with Ipe.
- One of the nicest features of Ipe is the possibility to have the mouse *snap* to other objects. That is, the user can make certain objects in the drawing canvas *magnetic*, which makes it very easy to align an object under construction to other objects.
- If the cursor is too far away from the nearest interesting object then the cursor will not snap. The snapping threshold can be changed in Ipe's configuration window.
- Ipe supports three types of snapping: *grid snapping* (to grid points), *context snapping* (to vertices, boundaries, intersections), and *directional/angular snapping*.

Sample Snapping in Ipe

- Suppose we are given the segments s_1, s_2 and e, with end points p and q, and want to add vertical extensions through p and q between s_1 and s_2.

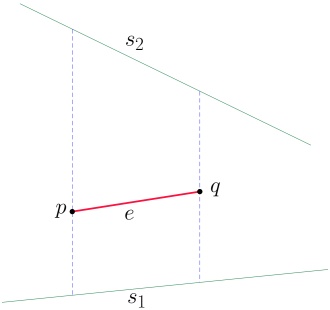


1. Turn on vertex snapping (.), e.g., by pressing F4, and go into polyline mode.



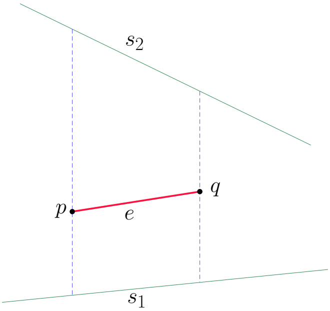
Sample Snapping in Ipe

1. Turn on vertex snapping (.), e.g., by pressing F4, and go into polyline mode.
2. Move cursor near *p* and set the coordinate origin by pressing F1.



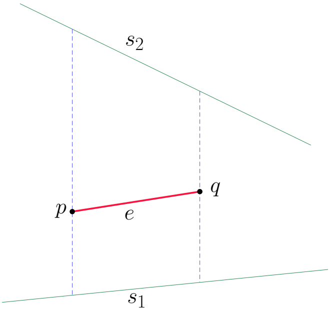
Sample Snapping in Ipe

1. Turn on vertex snapping (.), e.g., by pressing F4, and go into polyline mode.
2. Move cursor near *p* and set the coordinate origin by pressing F1.
3. Turn on directional snapping (–) by pressing F5.



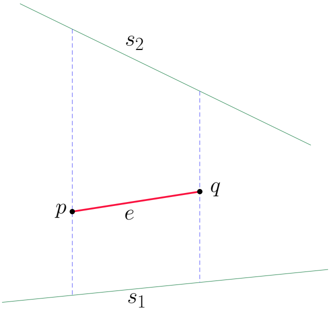
Sample Snapping in Ipe

1. Turn on vertex snapping (.), e.g., by pressing F4, and go into polyline mode.
2. Move cursor near p and set the coordinate origin by pressing F1.
3. Turn on directional snapping (−) by pressing F5.
4. Go near s_1 and click left mouse button, then go near s_2 and click right mouse button.

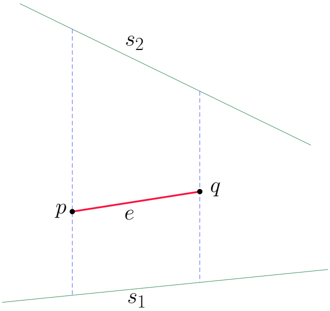


Sample Snapping in Ipe

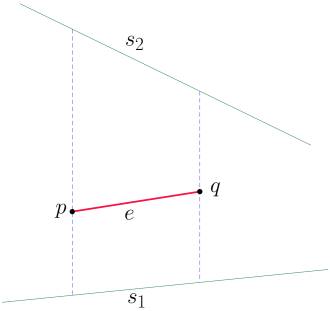
1. Turn on vertex snapping (.), e.g., by pressing F4, and go into polyline mode.
2. Move cursor near p and set the coordinate origin by pressing F1.
3. Turn on directional snapping (−) by pressing F5.
4. Go near s_1 and click left mouse button, then go near s_2 and click right mouse button.
5. Go near q, re-set the coordinate origin by pressing F1, and draw the second vertical line.



1. Turn on vertex snapping (.), e.g., by pressing F4, and go into polyline mode.
2. Move cursor near p and set the coordinate origin by pressing F1.
3. Turn on directional snapping (−) by pressing F5.
4. Go near s_1 and click left mouse button, then go near s_2 and click right mouse button.
5. Go near q, re-set the coordinate origin by pressing F1, and draw the second vertical line.
6. Turn off the coordinate system by pressing CTRL-F1.



1. Turn on vertex snapping (.), e.g., by pressing F4, and go into polyline mode.
2. Move cursor near p and set the coordinate origin by pressing F1.
3. Turn on directional snapping (–) by pressing F5.
4. Go near s_1 and click left mouse button, then go near s_2 and click right mouse button.
5. Go near q, re-set the coordinate origin by pressing F1, and draw the second vertical line.
6. Turn off the coordinate system by pressing CTRL-F1.



- Note that pressing F1 at point p and then pressing F2 at point q will set the coordinate origin at p and will align one coordinate axis with the line through p and q.

3 Drafting Figures and Generating Plots

- LaTeX and PostScript
- Drafting Packages
- Utilities
  - PSfrag
  - Pstoedit
  - Convert
  - xwd
- Plotting

PSfrag for Generating LaTeX Symbols

- While `Tgif` can generate `PS` output that is suitable for inclusion into a LaTeX document, it cannot generate all the (mathematical) symbols that LaTeX supports.

PSfrag for Generating LaTeX Symbols

- While `Tgif` can generate PS output that is suitable for inclusion into a LaTeX document, it cannot generate all the (mathematical) symbols that LaTeX supports.
- PSfrag is a set of LaTeX macros for overlaying PS figures (or any other PS text) with fragments of LaTeX.
- More precisely, the PSfrag macros allow specific pieces of PS text (so-called “tags”) in a PS figure to be replaced with arbitrary fragments of LaTeX. When the document is latex’ed and dvips’ed, each piece of PS text is replaced by the properly sized, aligned, and rotated LaTeX text.
- In this way, Greek letters, super- and subscripts and mathematical symbols can be used in PS files with a typography that is consistent with the rest of the LaTeX document.

PSfrag and LaTeX

- For each tag word in the EPS file, one adds a command to the LaTeX document to specify how this tag is to replaced, as follows:

  `\psfrag{`tag`}[`posn`][`psposn`][`scale`][`angle`]{`LaTeX text`}`

- All data given in brackets `[]` is optional and is used to specify the exact position and orientation of the LaTeX text with respect to the bounding box of the tag string. (See the manual for details.)

UNIV. SALZBURG
COMPUTERWISSENSCHAFTEN

- For each tag word in the EPS file, one adds a command to the LaTeX document to specify how this tag is to replaced, as follows:

  `\psfrag{`tag`}` `[`posn`]` `[`psposn`]` `[`scale`]` `[`angle`]` `{`LaTeX text`}`

- All data given in brackets `[]` is optional and is used to specify the exact position and orientation of the LaTeX text with respect to the bounding box of the tag string. (See the manual for details.)
- Any text that is not mentioned in a `\psfrag` command will not be replaced; hence, PS and LaTeX text can be freely mixed.

- For each tag word in the EPS file, one adds a command to the LaTeX document to specify how this tag is to replaced, as follows:

  `\psfrag{tag}[posn][psposn][scale][angle]{LaTeX text}`

- All data given in brackets `[]` is optional and is used to specify the exact position and orientation of the LaTeX text with respect to the bounding box of the tag string. (See the manual for details.)
- Any text that is not mentioned in a `\psfrag` command will not be replaced; hence, PS and LaTeX text can be freely mixed.
- Most DVI previewers (such as `xdvi`) are incapable of displaying the replaced text correctly.
- Note that `psfrag` relies on the PostScript `\special` command.

PSfrag and LaTeX

- For each tag word in the EPS file, one adds a command to the LaTeX document to specify how this tag is to replaced, as follows:

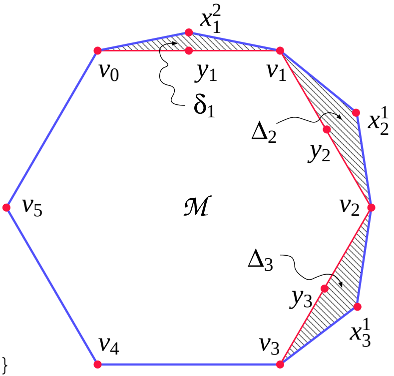
  `\psfrag{`tag`}[`posn`][`psposn`][`scale`][`angle`]{`LaTeX text`}`

- All data given in brackets `[]` is optional and is used to specify the exact position and orientation of the LaTeX text with respect to the bounding box of the tag string. (See the manual for details.)
- Any text that is not mentioned in a `\psfrag` command will not be replaced; hence, PS and LaTeX text can be freely mixed.
- Most DVI previewers (such as `xdvi`) are incapable of displaying the replaced text correctly.
- Note that `psfrag` relies on the PostScript `\special` command.
- A `\psfrag` replacement will remain in effect until its surrounding environment is exited.
- Thus, one can define global `\psfrag` commands which will apply to every figure of a LaTeX file, or one can define `\psfrag` commands inside an environment (e.g., a `figure` environment) which will apply to only one EPS file.

UNIV. SALZBURG
COMPUTERWISSENSCHAFTEN

Sample PSfrag Code

```
\psfrag{v0}{{\Large $v_0$}}
\psfrag{v1}{{\Large $v_1$}}
\psfrag{v2}{{\Large $v_2$}}
\psfrag{v3}{{\Large $v_3$}}
\psfrag{v4}{{\Large $v_4$}}
\psfrag{v5}{{\Large $v_5$}}
\psfrag{x12}{{\Large $x_1^2$}}
\psfrag{x21}{{\Large $x_2^1$}}
\psfrag{x31}{{\Large $x_3^1$}}
\psfrag{y1}{{\Large $y_1$}}
\psfrag{y2}{{\Large $y_2$}}
\psfrag{y3}{{\Large $y_3$}}
\psfrag{delta1}{{\Large $\delta_1$}}
\psfrag{Delta1}{{\Large $\Delta_1$}}
\psfrag{Delta2}{{\Large $\Delta_2$}}
\psfrag{Delta3}{{\Large $\Delta_3$}}
\psfrag{hex}{{\Large $\cal{M}$}}
\includegraphics{grasp_hex}
```



PSfrag and LaTeX

- PSfrag requires a recent version of LaTeX.
- A compatible DVI-to-PS driver is required, too. PSfrag works best with `dvips`, the DVI-to-PS driver from Radical Eye Software.
- Note that the file `psfrag.sty` has to be installed in a location searched by the LaTeX search path for macros. For `kpathsea`-based systems such as `teTeX`, this path is determined by the `TEXINPUTS` environment variable.
- Also, the DVI-to-PS driver has to be able to find the file `psfrag.pro`.

UNIV. SALZBURG
COMPUTERWISSENSCHAFTEN

Pstoedit Utility

- The utility `pstoedit` translates PS (and PDF) graphics into other vector formats.
- Currently, `pstoedit` can generate the following formats (among many others):
  - PDF,
  - OBJ (for `tgif`),
  - FIG (for `xfig`),
  - MP (for METAPOST and TEX/LATEX usage),
  - DXF (CAD exchange format),
  - HPGL,
  - SVG,
  - gnuplot format.

Pstoedit Utility

- The utility `pstoedit` translates PS (and PDF) graphics into other vector formats.
- Currently, `pstoedit` can generate the following formats (among many others):
  - PDF,
  - OBJ (for `tgif`),
  - FIG (for `xfig`),
  - MP (for METAPOST and TEX/LATEX usage),
  - DXF (CAD exchange format),
  - HPGL,
  - SVG,
  - gnuplot format.
- Note that you will need a PS interpreter to get `pstoedit` to work.
- Also, your PS interpreter needs to be capable of processing PDF if you'd like to use `pstoedit` to convert PDF to other vector formats.

Convert Utility

- The utility `convert`, which is part of the `ImageMagick` suite of tools, lets you convert between image formats.
- It supports reading and/or writing more than 100 major image formats.
- It can also perform other operations on an image, e.g., resize, crop, flip, . . .

Convert Utility

- The utility `convert`, which is part of the `ImageMagick` suite of tools, lets you convert between image formats.
- It supports reading and/or writing more than 100 major image formats.
- It can also perform other operations on an image, e.g., resize, crop, flip, . . .
- In the simplest form of its usage, one specifies the input file followed by the output file (with appropriate extensions):
  `convert label.xwd label.png`

Convert Utility

- The utility `convert`, which is part of the `ImageMagick` suite of tools, lets you convert between image formats.
- It supports reading and/or writing more than 100 major image formats.
- It can also perform other operations on an image, e.g., resize, crop, flip, . . .
- In the simplest form of its usage, one specifies the input file followed by the output file (with appropriate extensions):

```
convert label.xwd label.png
```

- But it is more than just a simple converter. The following example was taken from www.imagemagick.org/script/command-line-processing.php:

```
convert label.png +matte
        \( +clone -shade 110x90 -normalize -negate +clone
                  -compose Plus -composite \)
        \( -clone 0 -shade 110x50 -normalize -channel BG
                  -fx 0 +channel -matte \)
        -delete 0 +swap -compose Multiply
        -composite "button.png"
```

Convert Utility

- The utility `convert`, which is part of the `ImageMagick` suite of tools, lets you convert between image formats.
- It supports reading and/or writing more than 100 major image formats.
- It can also perform other operations on an image, e.g., resize, crop, flip, . . .
- In the simplest form of its usage, one specifies the input file followed by the output file (with appropriate extensions):

```
convert label.xwd label.png
```

- But it is more than just a simple converter. The following example was taken from www.imagemagick.org/script/command-line-processing.php:

```
convert label.png +matte
      \( +clone -shade 110x90 -normalize -negate +clone
               -compose Plus -composite \)
      \( -clone 0 -shade 110x50 -normalize -channel BG
               -fx 0 +channel -matte \)
      -delete 0 +swap -compose Multiply
      -composite "button.png"
```

- This command transforms  to .

xwd – Making X11 Screen Dumps

- `Xwd` is a utility for storing X11 window images in a specially formatted dump file.
- This file can then be read by various other X11 utilities (such as `gimp`) for redisplay, printing, editing, formatting, archiving, image processing, etc.
- The target window is selected by clicking the mouse pointer in the desired window. The keyboard bell is rung once at the beginning of the dump and twice when the dump is completed.
- `Xwd` is part of the standard X11 distribution.

UNIV. SALZBURG
COMPUTERWISSENSCHAFTEN

xwd – Making X11 Screen Dumps

- `Xwd` is a utility for storing X11 window images in a specially formatted dump file.
- This file can then be read by various other X11 utilities (such as `gimp`) for redisplay, printing, editing, formatting, archiving, image processing, etc.
- The target window is selected by clicking the mouse pointer in the desired window. The keyboard bell is rung once at the beginning of the dump and twice when the dump is completed.
- `Xwd` is part of the standard X11 distribution.
- Sample command sequence for dumping a window into a file `foo.xwd`, and for converting it into a PostScript file:

```
xwd > foo.xwd
xpr -device ps -portrait  -psfig foo.xwd > foo.ps
```

xwd – Making X11 Screen Dumps

- `Xwd` is a utility for storing X11 window images in a specially formatted dump file.
- This file can then be read by various other X11 utilities (such as `gimp`) for redisplay, printing, editing, formatting, archiving, image processing, etc.
- The target window is selected by clicking the mouse pointer in the desired window. The keyboard bell is rung once at the beginning of the dump and twice when the dump is completed.
- `Xwd` is part of the standard X11 distribution.
- Sample command sequence for dumping a window into a file `foo.xwd`, and for converting it into a PostScript file:

```
xwd > foo.xwd
xpr -device ps -portrait  -psfig foo.xwd > foo.ps
```

- If `xpr` is not available, but `convert` is available, then the following command will work:

```
convert foo.xwd foo.ps
```

xwd – Making X11 Screen Dumps

- `Xwd` is a utility for storing X11 window images in a specially formatted dump file.
- This file can then be read by various other X11 utilities (such as `gimp`) for redisplay, printing, editing, formatting, archiving, image processing, etc.
- The target window is selected by clicking the mouse pointer in the desired window. The keyboard bell is rung once at the beginning of the dump and twice when the dump is completed.
- `Xwd` is part of the standard X11 distribution.
- Sample command sequence for dumping a window into a file `foo.xwd`, and for converting it into a PostScript file:

```
xwd > foo.xwd
xpr -device ps -portrait  -psfig foo.xwd > foo.ps
```

- If `xpr` is not available, but `convert` is available, then the following command will work:

```
convert foo.xwd foo.ps
```

- Several packages for drafting and image manipulation also support capturing part or all of an X11 display.

3 Drafting Figures and Generating Plots

- $\LaTeX$ and PostScript
- Drafting Packages
- Utilities
- Plotting
  - Xgraph
  - Gnuplot

Xgraph – A Simple Plotting Program

- Xgraph plots simple graphs, displaying them in a window that it creates.
- In its simplest form it is invoked as `xgraph foo`, where `foo` is a data file containing coordinates of points, one per line, with the *x*- and *y*-coordinates separated by spaces. These points will be drawn connected by lines, with axes that are automatically scaled to the range of the *x*- and *y*-coordinates.

UNIV. SALZBURG
COMPUTERWISSENSCHAFTEN

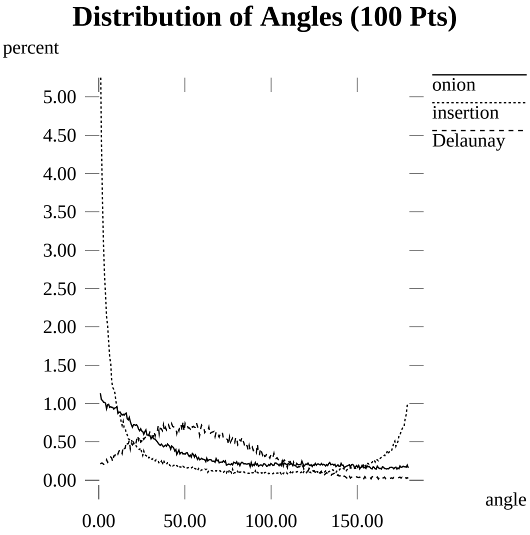
Xgraph – A Simple Plotting Program

- Xgraph plots simple graphs, displaying them in a window that it creates.
- In its simplest form it is invoked as `xgraph foo`, where `foo` is a data file containing coordinates of points, one per line, with the x- and y-coordinates separated by spaces. These points will be drawn connected by lines, with axes that are automatically scaled to the range of the x- and y-coordinates.
- Xgraph can plot several graphs superimposed by specifying more than one datafile, or by putting several datasets into one file, separated by blank lines.
- Various options allow one to plot points instead of or as well as lines, to plot on a log scale, and to change titles, etc.
- One can zoom into a plot interactively.
- One can convert plots to PS, and prepare them for inclusion into a LaTeX document.
- Xgraph supports the construction of multiple bar graphs, and allows a crude animation of the data set.

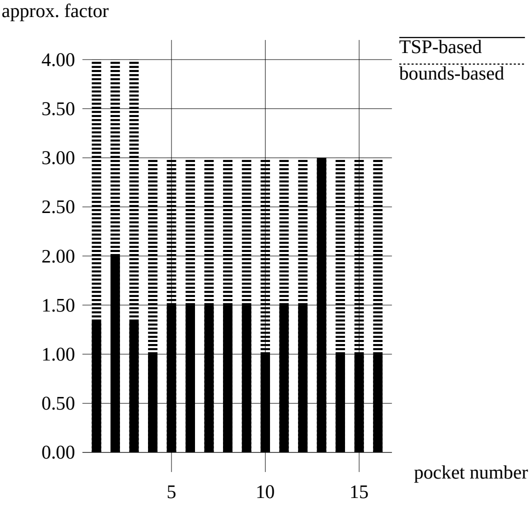
Xgraph – A Simple Plotting Program

- Xgraph plots simple graphs, displaying them in a window that it creates.
- In its simplest form it is invoked as `xgraph foo`, where `foo` is a data file containing coordinates of points, one per line, with the x- and y-coordinates separated by spaces. These points will be drawn connected by lines, with axes that are automatically scaled to the range of the x- and y-coordinates.
- Xgraph can plot several graphs superimposed by specifying more than one datafile, or by putting several datasets into one file, separated by blank lines.
- Various options allow one to plot points instead of or as well as lines, to plot on a log scale, and to change titles, etc.
- One can zoom into a plot interactively.
- One can convert plots to PS, and prepare them for inclusion into a LaTeX document.
- Xgraph supports the construction of multiple bar graphs, and allows a crude animation of the data set.
- The main advantage of xgraph is that it is convenient to use for simple tasks.
- Its main disadvantage is its somewhat limited functionality.

UNIV. SALZBURG
COMPUTERWISSENSCHAFTEN


Distribution of Angles (100 Pts)
percent
5.00
4.50
4.00
3.50
3.00
2.50
2.00
1.50
1.00
0.50
0.00
0.00
50.00
100.00
150.00
angle
onion
insertion
Delaunay

Sample Xgraph Plot



Gnuplot

- Gnuplot is a command-line driven interactive plotting tool.
- It can plot 2D and 3D graphs, and can handle plots of built-in or user-defined functions.

UNIV. SALZBURG
COMPUTERWISSENSCHAFTEN

- Gnuplot is a command-line driven interactive plotting tool.
- It can plot 2D and 3D graphs, and can handle plots of built-in or user-defined functions.
- Input for LaTeX can be generated by instructing gnuplot to output its plot in the EPS format: `set term postscript eps` tells gnuplot to generate the plot in EPS format.
- The command `set term pslatex` instructs gnuplot to generate a LaTeX picture of the plot, i.e., a LaTeX .tex file. The advantage of using the LaTeX picture environment is that all LaTeX commands can be used for making labels, etc. Its main disadvantage is that any LaTeX picture is limited by the small number of slopes that lines can be drawn with. Thus, the appearance of a plot is likely to be less than satisfying.

Gnuplot

- Gnuplot is a command-line driven interactive plotting tool.
- It can plot 2D and 3D graphs, and can handle plots of built-in or user-defined functions.
- Input for LaTeX can be generated by instructing gnuplot to output its plot in the EPS format: `set term postscript eps` tells gnuplot to generate the plot in EPS format.
- The command `set term pslatex` instructs gnuplot to generate a LaTeX picture of the plot, i.e., a LaTeX .tex file. The advantage of using the LaTeX picture environment is that all LaTeX commands can be used for making labels, etc. Its main disadvantage is that any LaTeX picture is limited by the small number of slopes that lines can be drawn with. Thus, the appearance of a plot is likely to be less than satisfying.
- If the `epic.sty` and `eepic.sty` style files for the extended picture environment of LaTeX are available then LaTeX can handle more general pictures, and gnuplot can be instructed to set its terminal type to `set term eepic`. Note, however, that this currently does not support dashed lines in the plots!

Gnuplot

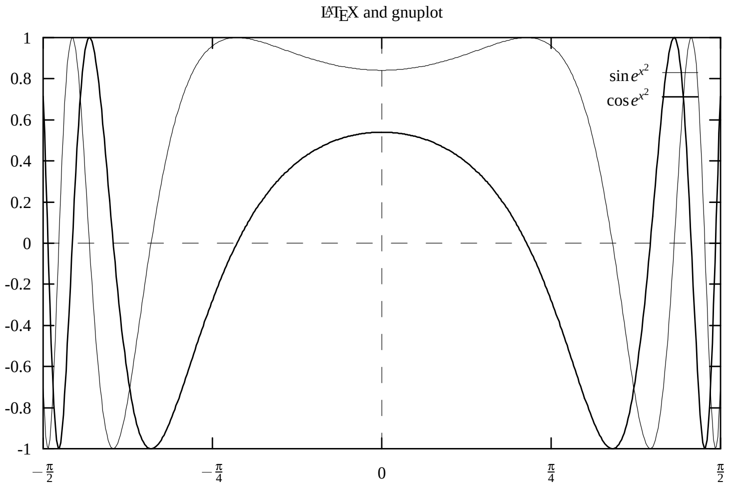
- Gnuplot is a command-line driven interactive plotting tool.
- It can plot 2D and 3D graphs, and can handle plots of built-in or user-defined functions.
- Input for LaTeX can be generated by instructing gnuplot to output its plot in the EPS format: `set term postscript eps` tells gnuplot to generate the plot in EPS format.
- The command `set term pslatex` instructs gnuplot to generate a LaTeX picture of the plot, i.e., a LaTeX .tex file. The advantage of using the LaTeX picture environment is that all LaTeX commands can be used for making labels, etc. Its main disadvantage is that any LaTeX picture is limited by the small number of slopes that lines can be drawn with. Thus, the appearance of a plot is likely to be less than satisfying.
- If the `epic.sty` and `eepic.sty` style files for the extended picture environment of LaTeX are available then LaTeX can handle more general pictures, and gnuplot can be instructed to set its terminal type to `set term eepic`. Note, however, that this currently does not support dashed lines in the plots!
- Another alternative for incorporating LaTeX text into a gnuplot plot is to `set term eps`, and to use `\psfrag` commands for replacing tag strings by actual LaTeX text.

Sample Gnuplot Plot

- The following plot was generated by means of gnuplot, and included into LaTeX by using the `eepic` environment:

```
f(x)=sin(exp(x**2))
g(x)=cos(exp(x**2))
set samples 500
set term eepic
set output 'gnuplot.tex'
set title '\LaTeX\ and gnuplot'
set xrange [-pi/2:pi/2]
set xtics ('$-\frac{\pi}{2}$' -pi/2, \
           '$-\frac{\pi}{4}$' -pi/4, '0' 0, \
           '$\frac{\pi}{4}$' pi/4, \
           '$\frac{\pi}{2}$' pi/2)
plot f(x) title '$\sin e^{x^2}$', \
     g(x) title '$\cos e^{x^2}$'
```

Sample Gnuplot Plot



4 pdfLaTeX and the Generation of Slides

- Portable Data Format (PDF)
- pdfTeX and pdfLaTeX
- Generating PDF Slides: LaTeX Beamer Class
- Current LaTeX-Related Projects

4 pdfLaTeX and the Generation of Slides

- Portable Data Format (PDF)
  - Introduction to PDF
  - Creating and Viewing a PDF File
- pdfTeX and pdfLaTeX
- Generating PDF Slides: LaTeX Beamer Class
- Current LaTeX-Related Projects

UNIV. SALZBURG
COMPUTERWISSENSCHAFTEN

Basics of PDF

- PDF (Portable Document Format) is a cross-platform high-resolution universal document exchange format created by Adobe, with Hypertext and multi-media functionality.
- PDF files are not HTML web pages.
- PDF files are a fast way to publish existing documents on the WWW without having to recreate them in HTML and without compromising the printed image quality.

UNIV. SALZBURG
COMPUTERWISSENSCHAFTEN

Basics of PDF

- PDF (Portable Document Format) is a cross-platform high-resolution universal document exchange format created by Adobe, with Hypertext and multi-media functionality.
- PDF files are not HTML web pages.
- PDF files are a fast way to publish existing documents on the WWW without having to recreate them in HTML and without compromising the printed image quality.
- PDF files can be viewed by a variety of tools that are freely available.
- Virtually any PS file can be *distilled* into a PDF file.
- Typically, a PDF file is much smaller than its corresponding PS file.
- PDF is a pure data format. Contrary to PostScript, it does not require complex operations to be performed prior to output.
- PDF is an object-oriented data format; individual PDF objects/pages can easily be extracted from a PDF file.

Basics of PDF

- PDF (Portable Document Format) is a cross-platform high-resolution universal document exchange format created by Adobe, with Hypertext and multi-media functionality.
- PDF files are not HTML web pages.
- PDF files are a fast way to publish existing documents on the WWW without having to recreate them in HTML and without compromising the printed image quality.
- PDF files can be viewed by a variety of tools that are freely available.
- Virtually any PS file can be *distilled* into a PDF file.
- Typically, a PDF file is much smaller than its corresponding PS file.
- PDF is a pure data format. Contrary to PostScript, it does not require complex operations to be performed prior to output.
- PDF is an object-oriented data format; individual PDF objects/pages can easily be extracted from a PDF file.
- At least in theory, the creator of a PDF document can block a user from copying of text or graphics, making changes, and printing the document. (This feature needs encryption; see later.)

UNIV. SALZBURG
COMPUTERWISSENSCHAFTEN

- PDF (Portable Document Format) is a cross-platform high-resolution universal document exchange format created by Adobe, with Hypertext and multi-media functionality.
- PDF files are not HTML web pages.
- PDF files are a fast way to publish existing documents on the WWW without having to recreate them in HTML and without compromising the printed image quality.
- PDF files can be viewed by a variety of tools that are freely available.
- Virtually any PS file can be *distilled* into a PDF file.
- Typically, a PDF file is much smaller than its corresponding PS file.
- PDF is a pure data format. Contrary to PostScript, it does not require complex operations to be performed prior to output.
- PDF is an object-oriented data format; individual PDF objects/pages can easily be extracted from a PDF file.
- At least in theory, the creator of a PDF document can block a user from copying of text or graphics, making changes, and printing the document. (This feature needs encryption; see later.)
- The PDF file format was standardized by ISO in 2008.

Pros of PDF

- PDF supports “byte-serving”: a PDF browser does not need to have an entire document in its local memory in order to display its first page.
- PDF supports a non-linear flow of reading.
- PDF provides efficient search and retrieval capabilities.

Pros of PDF

- PDF supports "byte-serving": a PDF browser does not need to have an entire document in its local memory in order to display its first page.
- PDF supports a non-linear flow of reading.
- PDF provides efficient search and retrieval capabilities.
- Little rework needed in order to provide CD/DVD/WWW distributable documents.
- Better resolution than with HTML.
- Better document security than with HTML.

Pros of PDF

- PDF supports “byte-serving”: a PDF browser does not need to have an entire document in its local memory in order to display its first page.
- PDF supports a non-linear flow of reading.
- PDF provides efficient search and retrieval capabilities.
- Little rework needed in order to provide CD/DVD/WWW distributable documents.
- Better resolution than with HTML.
- Better document security than with HTML.
- PDF files can be magnified up to 800% without loss of clarity in text or graphics.
- Fonts can be embedded in a PDF file.
- PDF has a built-in per-page compression.

Pros of PDF

- PDF supports “byte-serving”: a PDF browser does not need to have an entire document in its local memory in order to display its first page.
- PDF supports a non-linear flow of reading.
- PDF provides efficient search and retrieval capabilities.
- Little rework needed in order to provide CD/DVD/WWW distributable documents.
- Better resolution than with HTML.
- Better document security than with HTML.
- PDF files can be magnified up to 800% without loss of clarity in text or graphics.
- Fonts can be embedded in a PDF file.
- PDF has a built-in per-page compression.
- PDF is truly platform-independent, with support for reading PDF documents being available on all major platforms and operating systems (Unix/Linux, Windows, MacOS).
- MS Word can be instructed to output a document in PDF format, which, likely, is the simplest approach to making Word documents readable for Unix users without loss of visual quality.

Cons of PDF

- Adobe does not really strive to help third-party developers.
- Support by non-commercial tools still is rather limited.
- Adobe does no longer support the main PDF viewer for Unix/Linux systems.

Cons of PDF

- Adobe does not really strive to help third-party developers.
- Support by non-commercial tools still is rather limited.
- Adobe does no longer support the main PDF viewer for Unix/Linux systems.
- While a PDF file generally is smaller than a PS file, a gzipped PS file generally is much smaller than a gzipped PDF file.
- Unless care is taken, the embedding of fonts may cause huge PDF files.

UNIV. SALZBURG
COMPUTERWISSENSCHAFTEN

Cons of PDF

- Adobe does not really strive to help third-party developers.
- Support by non-commercial tools still is rather limited.
- Adobe does no longer support the main PDF viewer for Unix/Linux systems.
- While a PDF file generally is smaller than a PS file, a gzipped PS file generally is much smaller than a gzipped PDF file.
- Unless care is taken, the embedding of fonts may cause huge PDF files.
- While in the early years of PDF one had to resort to “patches” of open-source viewers to navigate around the security features of PDF, nowadays mainstream viewers let the user choose whether or not to obey DRM restrictions.

Adobe's Commercial PDF Tools

Acrobat Distiller converts a PS file into a PDF file. It first applies a “normalization” to the PS file in order to free it from non-standard features and flavors. Supposedly, it can handle virtually any flavor of PostScript.

Acrobat Exchange supports a minimal amount of editing and formatting for final customization. Its input is a distilled PDF file. In Acrobat Exchange, one can supply hypertext links to other portions of the document (e.g., to a table of contents) or to other PDF files or WWW sites. Sounds and Quicktime movies can be included, too.

Acrobat Catalog features extensive indexing and searching capabilities. It can handle hundreds of PDF files, and produces a search data structures that can be searched very efficiently.

Adobe's Commercial PDF Tools

Acrobat Distiller converts a PS file into a PDF file. It first applies a "normalization" to the PS file in order to free it from non-standard features and flavors. Supposedly, it can handle virtually any flavor of PostScript.

Acrobat Exchange supports a minimal amount of editing and formatting for final customization. Its input is a distilled PDF file. In Acrobat Exchange, one can supply hypertext links to other portions of the document (e.g., to a table of contents) or to other PDF files or WWW sites. Sounds and Quicktime movies can be included, too.

Acrobat Catalog features extensive indexing and searching capabilities. It can handle hundreds of PDF files, and produces a search data structures that can be searched very efficiently.

Acrobat Reader, `acroread`, which is provided free of charge by Adobe, lets you display and print PDF files.

Adobe's Commercial PDF Tools

Acrobat Distiller converts a PS file into a PDF file. It first applies a "normalization" to the PS file in order to free it from non-standard features and flavors. Supposedly, it can handle virtually any flavor of PostScript.

Acrobat Exchange supports a minimal amount of editing and formatting for final customization. Its input is a distilled PDF file. In Acrobat Exchange, one can supply hypertext links to other portions of the document (e.g., to a table of contents) or to other PDF files or WWW sites. Sounds and Quicktime movies can be included, too.

Acrobat Catalog features extensive indexing and searching capabilities. It can handle hundreds of PDF files, and produces a search data structures that can be searched very efficiently.

Acrobat Reader, `acroread`, which is provided free of charge by Adobe, lets you display and print PDF files.

Warning

Adobe's official Linux version of `acroread` has not been updated since June 2013, and it is known to contain unfixed vulnerabilities that allow PDF exploits! It is wise to use `acroread` only for trustworthy PDF files, if at all.

Tools for Viewing PDF Files

Evince is the default document viewer of the Gnome project; it displays also other formats like `.ps`, `.djvu`, `.tiff` and `.odt` files.

Okular is the default document viewer of the KDE project; similar to Evince, it displays also other formats like `.ps`, `.djvu`, `.tiff` and `.odt` files.

Tools for Viewing PDF Files

Evince is the default document viewer of the Gnome project; it displays also other formats like `.ps`, `.djvu`, `.tiff` and `.odt` files.

Okular is the default document viewer of the KDE project; similar to Evince, it displays also other formats like `.ps`, `.djvu`, `.tiff` and `.odt` files.

pdfpc — PDF presenter console — is a GTK-based viewer which uses multi-monitor output to provide meta information to the speaker during the presentation.

BeamerPresenter also offers dual-monitor output and is similar to `pdfpc`; it tries to implement all features available in the LaTeX `beamer` class; works only on GNU/Linux with the X Window System.

Tools for Viewing PDF Files

Evince is the default document viewer of the Gnome project; it displays also other formats like `.ps`, `.djvu`, `.tiff` and `.odt` files.

Okular is the default document viewer of the KDE project; similar to Evince, it displays also other formats like `.ps`, `.djvu`, `.tiff` and `.odt` files.

pdfpc — PDF presenter console — is a GTK-based viewer which uses multi-monitor output to provide meta information to the speaker during the presentation.

BeamerPresenter also offers dual-monitor output and is similar to `pdfpc`; it tries to implement all features available in the LaTeX `beamer` class; works only on GNU/Linux with the X Window System.

Masterpdfeditor lets you view, edit, merge, split and sign PDF documents.

FoxitReader is a decent viewer/editor.

Tools for Viewing PDF Files

Evince is the default document viewer of the Gnome project; it displays also other formats like `.ps`, `.djvu`, `.tiff` and `.odt` files.

Okular is the default document viewer of the KDE project; similar to Evince, it displays also other formats like `.ps`, `.djvu`, `.tiff` and `.odt` files.

pdfpc — PDF presenter console — is a GTK-based viewer which uses multi-monitor output to provide meta information to the speaker during the presentation.

BeamerPresenter also offers dual-monitor output and is similar to `pdfpc`; it tries to implement all features available in the LaTeX `beamer` class; works only on GNU/Linux with the X Window System.

Masterpdfeditor lets you view, edit, merge, split and sign PDF documents.

FoxitReader is a decent viewer/editor.

No truly perfect solution on Linux

Unfortunately, so far none of the alternatives has managed to solve all problems:

- Some PDF files are displayed correctly only by `acroread`. (This includes PDF files generated with LibreOffice and pdfLaTeX!)
- Some government documents and forms to be filled in also cause troubles ...

PostScript-to-PDF Conversion

- The PostScript utility `ps2pdf` converts a PS file to a PDF file.
- It is based on Aladdin Ghostscript (`gs`).
- Currently, `ps2pdf` does a reasonable job on filled/stroked graphics, and on text in the 14 built-in PDF fonts in the intersection of Windows and ISO Latin-1 encodings.

UNIV. SALZBURG
COMPUTERWISSENSCHAFTEN

PostScript-to-PDF Conversion

- The PostScript utility `ps2pdf` converts a PS file to a PDF file.
- It is based on Aladdin Ghostscript (`gs`).
- Currently, `ps2pdf` does a reasonable job on filled/stroked graphics, and on text in the 14 built-in PDF fonts in the intersection of Windows and ISO Latin-1 encodings.
- It may convert all other text in the PS file to bitmaps in the PDF file, which are resolution-dependent. (It does only write the bitmap for each character once per page, though, and only on pages where the character is actually used.)
- It does not compress the output at all, except for character bitmaps.

PostScript-to-PDF Conversion

- The PostScript utility `ps2pdf` converts a PS file to a PDF file.
- It is based on Aladdin Ghostscript (`gs`).
- Currently, `ps2pdf` does a reasonable job on filled/stroked graphics, and on text in the 14 built-in PDF fonts in the intersection of Windows and ISO Latin-1 encodings.
- It may convert all other text in the PS file to bitmaps in the PDF file, which are resolution-dependent. (It does only write the bitmap for each character once per page, though, and only on pages where the character is actually used.)
- It does not compress the output at all, except for character bitmaps.
- The PERL script `epstopdf` does a similar job for EPS files, and it also relies on Ghostscript.

UNIV. SALZBURG
COMPUTERWISSENSCHAFTEN

4 pdfLaTeX and the Generation of Slides

- Portable Data Format (PDF)
- pdfTeX and pdfLaTeX
- Generating PDF Slides: LaTeX Beamer Class
- Current LaTeX-Related Projects

UNIV. SALZBURG
COMPUTERWISSENSCHAFTEN

pdfTEX and pdfLATEX

- Quote from the pdfTEX user manual:

  "The pdfTEX package is an extension of LATEX/TEX that can create PDF *directly from TEX/LATEX source files and improve/enhance the result of TEX typesetting with the help of* PDF*."*

pdfTEX and pdfLATEX

- Quote from the pdfTEX user manual:

  "The pdfTEX package is an extension of LATEX/TEX that can create PDF *directly from TEX/LATEX source files and improve/enhance the result of TEX typesetting with the help of* PDF*."*

- It produces PDF output that looks (virtually) identical to the DVI output.
- The typical use of the pdfTEX-package is with pre-generated formats for which PDF output has been enabled.

UNIV. SALZBURG
COMPUTERWISSENSCHAFTEN

- Quote from the pdfTeX user manual:

  "The pdfTeX package is an extension of LaTeX/TeX that can create PDF *directly from TeX/LaTeX source files and improve/enhance the result of TeX typesetting with the help of* PDF*."*

- It produces PDF output that looks (virtually) identical to the DVI output.
- The typical use of the pdfTeX-package is with pre-generated formats for which PDF output has been enabled.
- The `pdftex` command uses the equivalent of the plain TeX format, and the `pdflatex` command uses the equivalent of the LaTeX format.

pdfTEX and pdfLATEX

- Quote from the pdfTEX user manual:

  "The pdfTEX package is an extension of LATEX/TEX that can create PDF *directly from TEX/LATEX source files and improve/enhance the result of TEX typesetting with the help of* PDF*."*

- It produces PDF output that looks (virtually) identical to the DVI output.
- The typical use of the pdfTEX-package is with pre-generated formats for which PDF output has been enabled.
- The `pdftex` command uses the equivalent of the plain TEX format, and the `pdflatex` command uses the equivalent of the LATEX format.
- Currently, `pdftex`/`pdflatex` generate PDF Level 1.5 output. One can request Level 1.6 and Level 1.7 by setting, e.g., `\pdfminorversion=7` but this will not really change anything besides replacing the string 1.5 by, e.g., 1.7 in the PDF output file. (Level 2.0 has been published but is hardly supported by any application.)
- The package `pdfx.sty` provides (partial or experimental) support for other recent ISO standards for PDF.

UNIV. SALZBURG
COMPUTERWISSENSCHAFTEN

Macro Packages Supported by pdfTeX

- Currently, all mainstream macro packages offer pdfTeX support in some way.
- When using such a package, it makes sense to turn on this support in the appropriate way, otherwise one cannot be sure whether things will be set up correctly.

Macro Packages Supported by pdfTEX

- Currently, all mainstream macro packages offer pdfTEX support in some way.
- When using such a package, it makes sense to turn on this support in the appropriate way, otherwise one cannot be sure whether things will be set up correctly.
- For instance, the `hyperref` package has substantial support for pdfTEX, and provides access to most of its features. The user merely needs to load `hyperref` with the `pdftex` option, and all cross-references will be converted to PDF hypertext links.

```
\usepackage[pdftex]{hyperref}
```

  Bookmarks can be created to match the table of contents.

Macro Packages Supported by pdfTEX

- Currently, all mainstream macro packages offer pdfTEX support in some way.
- When using such a package, it makes sense to turn on this support in the appropriate way, otherwise one cannot be sure whether things will be set up correctly.
- For instance, the `hyperref` package has substantial support for pdfTEX, and provides access to most of its features. The user merely needs to load `hyperref` with the `pdftex` option, and all cross-references will be converted to PDF hypertext links.

  ```
  \usepackage[pdftex]{hyperref}
  ```

  Bookmarks can be created to match the table of contents.
- Similarly, the LATEX packages `graphicx` and `xcolor` have options for pdfTEX, which allow the use of the standard commands for color, text rotation, and graphics inclusion.

UNIV. SALZBURG
COMPUTERWISSENSCHAFTEN

Macro Packages Supported by pdfTEX

- Currently, all mainstream macro packages offer pdfTEX support in some way.
- When using such a package, it makes sense to turn on this support in the appropriate way, otherwise one cannot be sure whether things will be set up correctly.
- For instance, the `hyperref` package has substantial support for pdfTEX, and provides access to most of its features. The user merely needs to load `hyperref` with the `pdftex` option, and all cross-references will be converted to PDF hypertext links.

  ```
  \usepackage[pdftex]{hyperref}
  ```

  Bookmarks can be created to match the table of contents.
- Similarly, the LATEX packages `graphicx` and `xcolor` have options for pdfTEX, which allow the use of the standard commands for color, text rotation, and graphics inclusion.
- PDF support can also be turned on globally:

  ```
  \documentclass[...,pdftex,...]{...}
  ```

Manual Cross-Referencing, Bookmarks, URLs

- Manual tagging for cross-referencing:

```
\hyperlink{myref}{Clicking here will take you to ...}
\hypertarget{myref}{... this target}
```

UNIV. SALZBURG
COMPUTERWISSENSCHAFTEN

Manual Cross-Referencing, Bookmarks, URLs

- Manual tagging for cross-referencing:

```
\hyperlink{myref}{Clicking here will take you to ...}
\hypertarget{myref}{... this target}
```

- Similarly, bookmarks can be set manually:

```
\pdfbookmark[level]{bookmark text}{myref}
```

UNIV. SALZBURG
COMPUTERWISSENSCHAFTEN

Manual Cross-Referencing, Bookmarks, URLs

- Manual tagging for cross-referencing:

```
\hyperlink{myref}{Clicking here will take you to ...}
\hypertarget{myref}{... this target}
```

- Similarly, bookmarks can be set manually:

```
\pdfbookmark[level]{bookmark text}{myref}
```

- Clicking on an `href` construct will start a web browser and take you to the page specified:

```
\href{http://www.cosy.sbg.ac.at}{Departmental home page}
\url{http://www.cosy.sbg.ac.at}
```

Manual Cross-Referencing, Bookmarks, URLs

- Manual tagging for cross-referencing:

```
\hyperlink{myref}{Clicking here will take you to ...}
\hypertarget{myref}{... this target}
```

- Similarly, bookmarks can be set manually:

```
\pdfbookmark[level]{bookmark text}{myref}
```

- Clicking on an `href` construct will start a web browser and take you to the page specified:

```
\href{http://www.cosy.sbg.ac.at}{Departmental home page}
\url{http://www.cosy.sbg.ac.at}
```

- Similarly for other descriptors:

```
\href{ftp://...}
\href{mailto:...}
\href{run:...}
```

Manual Cross-Referencing, Bookmarks, URLs

- Manual tagging for cross-referencing:

```
\hyperlink{myref}{Clicking here will take you to ...}
\hypertarget{myref}{... this target}
```

- Similarly, bookmarks can be set manually:

```
\pdfbookmark[level]{bookmark text}{myref}
```

- Clicking on an `href` construct will start a web browser and take you to the page specified:

```
\href{http://www.cosy.sbg.ac.at}{Departmental home page}
\url{http://www.cosy.sbg.ac.at}
```

- Similarly for other descriptors:

```
\href{ftp://...}
\href{mailto:...}
\href{run:...}
```

- Menu functions of `acroread` can be accessed via links, e.g.:

```
\Acrobatmenu{Print}{print this document}
```

UNIV. SALZBURG
COMPUTERWISSENSCHAFTEN

pdfLaTeX and PostScript

- Native pdfLaTeX supports the inclusion of pictures in PNG, JPEG, TIFF and PDF format.

UNIV. SALZBURG
COMPUTERWISSENSCHAFTEN

- Native pdfLaTeX supports the inclusion of pictures in PNG, JPEG, TIFF and PDF format.
- EPS files can be converted to PDF by Ghostscript, Acrobat Distiller, or by the PERL script `epstopdf`; PS files can be converted by `ps2pdf`.

pdfLaTeX and PostScript

- Native pdfLaTeX supports the inclusion of pictures in PNG, JPEG, TIFF and PDF format.
- EPS files can be converted to PDF by Ghostscript, Acrobat Distiller, or by the PERL script `epstopdf`; PS files can be converted by `ps2pdf`.
- If you want to be able to build PS and PDF files from the same source, leave off the file extensions from the image filenames in the `\includegraphics` calls.

- Native pdfLaTeX supports the inclusion of pictures in PNG, JPEG, TIFF and PDF format.
- EPS files can be converted to PDF by Ghostscript, Acrobat Distiller, or by the PERL script `epstopdf`; PS files can be converted by `ps2pdf`.
- If you want to be able to build PS and PDF files from the same source, leave off the file extensions from the image filenames in the `\includegraphics` calls.
- Since TeX Live 2010, pdfLaTeX automatically converts EPS files to PDF, via the `epstopdf` package. (Same for XeLaTeX.)

- Native pdfLaTeX supports the inclusion of pictures in PNG, JPEG, TIFF and PDF format.
- EPS files can be converted to PDF by Ghostscript, Acrobat Distiller, or by the PERL script `epstopdf`; PS files can be converted by `ps2pdf`.
- If you want to be able to build PS and PDF files from the same source, leave off the file extensions from the image filenames in the `\includegraphics` calls.
- Since TeX Live 2010, pdfLaTeX automatically converts EPS files to PDF, via the `epstopdf` package. (Same for XeLaTeX.)
- Similarly, the `pstricks` can be used by an up-to-date TeX distribution with the following command:

  ```
  \usepackage[pdf]{pstricks}
  ```

pdfLaTeX and PostScript

- Native pdfLaTeX supports the inclusion of pictures in PNG, JPEG, TIFF and PDF format.
- EPS files can be converted to PDF by Ghostscript, Acrobat Distiller, or by the PERL script `epstopdf`; PS files can be converted by `ps2pdf`.
- If you want to be able to build PS and PDF files from the same source, leave off the file extensions from the image filenames in the `\includegraphics` calls.
- Since TeX Live 2010, pdfLaTeX automatically converts EPS files to PDF, via the `epstopdf` package. (Same for XeLaTeX.)
- Similarly, the `pstricks` can be used by an up-to-date TeX distribution with the following command:

  ```
  \usepackage[pdf]{pstricks}
  ```

- The standard `\psfrag` replacements can be used with the command

  ```
  \usepackage{auto-pst-pdf}
  ```

  provided that shell escapes are allowed: For TeX Live we use

  ```
  pdflatex --shell-escape   ...
  ```

  while the command-line option `--enable-write18` should work for MiKTeX.

4 pdfLaTeX and the Generation of Slides

- Portable Data Format (PDF)
- pdfTeX and pdfLaTeX
- Generating PDF Slides: LaTeX Beamer Class
  - Structuring
  - Special Frames
  - Partial Builds and Overlays
  - Animations
  - Visual Appearance
- Current LaTeX-Related Projects

LaTeX Beamer Class

- Created by Till Tantau in 2003, and distributed via the Comprehensive TeX Archive Network (CTAN, `https://ctan.org/`).
- The LaTeX beamer class allows to create slides directly within LaTeX, with no need to resort to postprocessing by other software packages.
- It can be used with `pdflatex`, but also with `dvips`.
- Professional layouts and sophisticated overlays can be achieved.

UNIV. SALZBURG
COMPUTERWISSENSCHAFTEN

LaTeX Beamer Class

- Created by Till Tantau in 2003, and distributed via the Comprehensive TeX Archive Network (CTAN, `https://ctan.org/`).
- The LaTeX beamer class allows to create slides directly within LaTeX, with no need to resort to postprocessing by other software packages.
- It can be used with `pdflatex`, but also with `dvips`.
- Professional layouts and sophisticated overlays can be achieved.
- These slides (and the corresponding handouts) were prepared using `pdflatex` and the LaTeX beamer class — based on one set of source files for all three PDF outputs.
- Note that the word "beamer" is a pseudo-anglicism.

UNIV. SALZBURG
COMPUTERWISSENSCHAFTEN

LaTeX Beamer Class: Structuring

- Section:

  ```
  \section{...}
  ```

LaTeX Beamer Class: Structuring

- Section:

```
\section{...}
```

- Subsection:

```
\subsection{...}
\subsubsection{...}
```

UNIV. SALZBURG
COMPUTERWISSENSCHAFTEN

- Section:

```
\section{...}
```

- Subsection:

```
\subsection{...}
\subsubsection{...}
```

- Slide:

```
\begin{frame}\frametitle{...} ... \end{frame}
```

LaTeX Beamer Class: Structuring

- Section:

```
\section{...}
```

- Subsection:

```
\subsection{...}
\subsubsection{...}
```

- Slide:

```
\begin{frame}\frametitle{...} ... \end{frame}
```

- Block:

```
\begin{block} ... \end{block}
\begin{alertblock} ... \end{alertblock}
\begin{exampleblock} ... \end{exampleblock}
```

LaTeX Beamer Class: Structuring

- Section:

  ```
  \section{...}
  ```

- Subsection:

  ```
  \subsection{...}
  \subsubsection{...}
  ```

- Slide:

  ```
  \begin{frame}\frametitle{...} ... \end{frame}
  ```

- Block:

  ```
  \begin{block} ... \end{block}
  \begin{alertblock} ... \end{alertblock}
  \begin{exampleblock} ... \end{exampleblock}
  ```

- (Standard) LaTeX lists:

  ```
  \begin{itemize} ... \end{itemize}
  \begin{enumerate} ... \end{enumerate}
  \begin{description} ... \end{description}
  ```

- Multiple columns:

Block: Lorem ...

Lorem ipsum dolor sit amet, ...

Warning: Pseudo Latin

Lorem ipsum dolor sit amet, consectetur adipisici elit, sed eiusmod tempor incidunt ut labore et dolore magna aliqua. Ut enim ...

Example

Lorem ipsum dolor sit amet, ...

- Multiple columns:

Block: Lorem ...

Lorem ipsum dolor sit amet, ...

Warning: Pseudo Latin

Lorem ipsum dolor sit amet, consectetur adipisici elit, sed eiusmod tempor incidunt ut labore et dolore magna aliqua. Ut enim ...

Example

Lorem ipsum dolor sit amet, ...

```
\begin{columns}[c]
  \column{0.25\textwidth}
  \begin{block}{Block: Lorem ...}
      Lorem ipsum dolor sit amet, consectetur adipisici elit, ...
  \end{block}
  \column{0.45\textwidth}
  \begin{alertblock}{Warning: Pseudo Latin}
      Lorem ipsum dolor sit amet, consectetur adipisici elit, ...
  \end{alertblock}
  \column{0.15\textwidth}
  \begin{exampleblock}{Example}
      Lorem ipsum dolor sit amet, consectetur adipisici elit, ...
  \end{exampleblock}
\end{columns}
```

LaTeX Beamer Class: Special Frames

- Title page:

```
\begin{frame}[plain]
    \titlepage
\end{frame}
```

LaTeX Beamer Class: Special Frames

- Title page:

```
\begin{frame}[plain]
    \titlepage
\end{frame}
```

- Table of content:

```
\begin{frame}\frametitle{Contents} % or something else
                                   % as frame title
    \tableofcontents[subsectionstyle=hide
                     subsubsectionstyle=hide]
\end{frame}
```

UNIV. SALZBURG
COMPUTERWISSENSCHAFTEN

LaTeX Beamer Class: Special Frames

- Title page:

```
\begin{frame}[plain]
    \titlepage
\end{frame}
```

- Table of content:

```
\begin{frame}\frametitle{Contents} % or something else
                                    % as frame title
    \tableofcontents[subsectionstyle=hide
                     subsubsectionstyle=hide]
\end{frame}
```

- At the begin of a section:

```
\AtBeginSection[]{
\begin{frame}
\tableofcontents[sectionstyle=show/hide,hideothersubsections,
                          subsubsectionstyle=hide/hide/hide]
\end{frame}
}
```

UNIV. SALZBURG
COMPUTERWISSENSCHAFTEN

LaTeX Beamer Class: Partial Build

- The `\pause` command can be used for simple partial builds of a page.

```
\begin{itemize}
  \item The \verb#\pause# command can be used for simple
        partial builds of a page.
\pause
  \item Note that using \verb#\verb# or the \verb#verbatim#
        environment ...
\end{itemize}
```

- The `\pause` command can be used for simple partial builds of a page.

```
\begin{itemize}
  \item The \verb#\pause# command can be used for simple
        partial builds of a page.
\pause
  \item Note that using \verb#\verb# or the \verb#verbatim#
        environment ...
\end{itemize}
```

- Note that using the `\verb` command or the `verbatim` environment in conjunction with `\pause` requires to specify the option `[fragile]` after `\begin{frame}`:

```
\begin{frame}[fragile]\frametitle{\LaTeX\ Beamer Class:
                                              Partial Build}
```

UNIV. SALZBURG
COMPUTERWISSENSCHAFTEN

```
\begin{itemize}
  \item<1>{only on overlay 1}
  \item<1->{\color<1-3>{blue}{blue text only on overlays 1--3}}
  \item\alt<2>{only on overlay 2}{on all overlays except 2}
  \item<3->{on  overlay 3 and all subsequent overlays}
  \item<4>{only on overlay 4}
  \item<5>{The overlay specification ...}
\end{itemize}
```

LaTeX Beamer Class: Overlays

```
\begin{itemize}
  \item<1>{only on overlay 1}
  \item<1->{\color<1-3>{blue}{blue text only on overlays 1--3}}
  \item\alt<2>{only on overlay 2}{on all overlays except 2}
  \item<3->{on  overlay 3 and all subsequent overlays}
  \item<4>{only on overlay 4}
  \item<5>{The overlay specification ...}
\end{itemize}
```

Overlay 1

- only on overlay 1
- blue text only on overlays 1–3
- on all overlays except 2

LaTeX Beamer Class: Overlays

```
\begin{itemize}
  \item<1>{only on overlay 1}
  \item<1->{\color<1-3>{blue}{blue text only on overlays 1--3}}
  \item\alt<2>{only on overlay 2}{on all overlays except 2}
  \item<3->{on  overlay 3 and all subsequent overlays}
  \item<4>{only on overlay 4}
  \item<5>{The overlay specification ...}
\end{itemize}
```

Overlay 2

- blue text only on overlays 1–3
- only on overlay 2

UNIV. SALZBURG
COMPUTERWISSENSCHAFTEN

LaTeX Beamer Class: Overlays

```
\begin{itemize}
  \item<1>{only on overlay 1}
  \item<1->{\color<1-3>{blue}{blue text only on overlays 1--3}}
  \item\alt<2>{only on overlay 2}{on all overlays except 2}
  \item<3->{on  overlay 3 and all subsequent overlays}
  \item<4>{only on overlay 4}
  \item<5>{The overlay specification ...}
\end{itemize}
```

Overlay 3

- blue text only on overlays 1–3
- on all overlays except 2
- on overlay 3 and all subsequent overlays

LaTeX Beamer Class: Overlays

```
\begin{itemize}
  \item<1>{only on overlay 1}
  \item<1->{\color<1-3>{blue}{blue text only on overlays 1--3}}
  \item\alt<2>{only on overlay 2}{on all overlays except 2}
  \item<3->{on  overlay 3 and all subsequent overlays}
  \item<4>{only on overlay 4}
  \item<5>{The overlay specification ...}
\end{itemize}
```

Overlay 4

- blue text only on overlays 1–3
- on all overlays except 2
- on overlay 3 and all subsequent overlays
- only on overlay 4

UNIV. SALZBURG
COMPUTERWISSENSCHAFTEN

```
\begin{itemize}
  \item<1>{only on overlay 1}
  \item<1->{\color<1-3>{blue}{blue text only on overlays 1--3}}
  \item\alt<2>{only on overlay 2}{on all overlays except 2}
  \item<3->{on  overlay 3 and all subsequent overlays}
  \item<4>{only on overlay 4}
  \item<5>{The overlay specification ...}
\end{itemize}
```

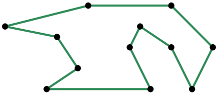
Overlay 5

- blue text only on overlays 1–3
- on all overlays except 2
- on overlay 3 and all subsequent overlays

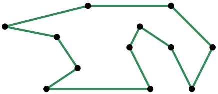
- The overlay specification can be used with quite a few other LaTeX commands, too. E.g., `\includegraphics<1|handout:0>{...}`.

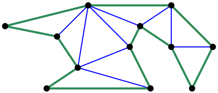
UNIV. SALZBURG
COMPUTERWISSENSCHAFTEN

LaTeX Beamer Class: Overlays in Conjunction with Ipe's Views

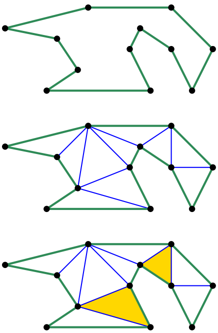


- Suppose that we want to explain a concept that requires to display similar figures repeatedly. E.g.,
  1. a polygon,





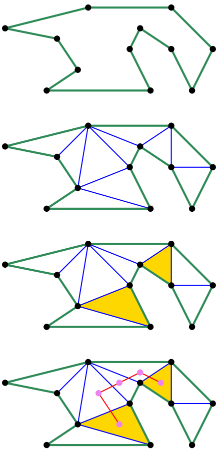
- Suppose that we want to explain a concept that requires to display similar figures repeatedly. E.g.,
  1. a polygon,
  2. its triangulation,



- Suppose that we want to explain a concept that requires to display similar figures repeatedly. E.g.,
  1. a polygon,
  2. its triangulation,
  3. two specific triangles,

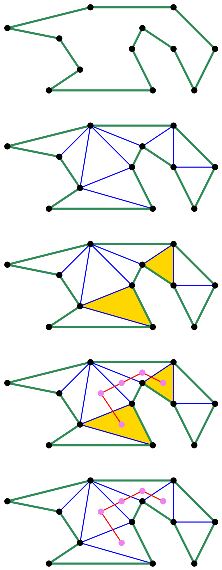
UNIV. SALZBURG
COMPUTERWISSENSCHAFTEN

LaTeX Beamer Class: Overlays in Conjunction with Ipe's Views

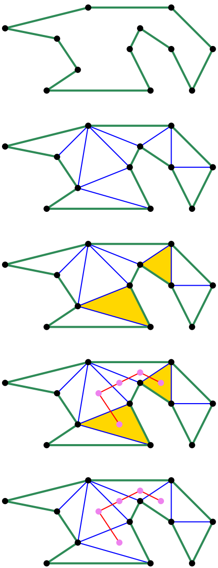


- Suppose that we want to explain a concept that requires to display similar figures repeatedly. E.g.,
  1. a polygon,
  2. its triangulation,
  3. two specific triangles,
  4. the triangles and a path between them,

LaTeX Beamer Class: Overlays in Conjunction with Ipe's Views

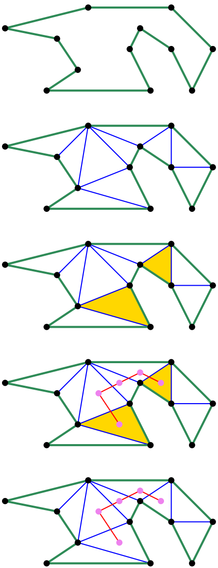


- Suppose that we want to explain a concept that requires to display similar figures repeatedly. E.g.,
  1. a polygon,
  2. its triangulation,
  3. two specific triangles,
  4. the triangles and a path between them, and
  5. only the path.



- Suppose that we want to explain a concept that requires to display similar figures repeatedly. E.g.,
  1. a polygon,
  2. its triangulation,
  3. two specific triangles,
  4. the triangles and a path between them, and
  5. only the path.
- Ipe allows to group contents of a figure into layers which can be turned on and off indvidually.

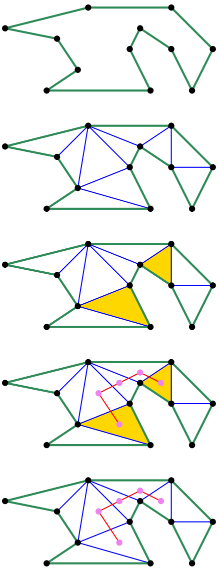
LaTeX Beamer Class: Overlays in Conjunction with Ipe's Views



- Suppose that we want to explain a concept that requires to display similar figures repeatedly. E.g.,
  1. a polygon,
  2. its triangulation,
  3. two specific triangles,
  4. the triangles and a path between them, and
  5. only the path.
- Ipe allows to group contents of a figure into layers which can be turned on and off indvidually.
- An Ipe *view* is a list of layers that are turned on.
- When saved as a PDF file, each view becomes a single page in the PDF.

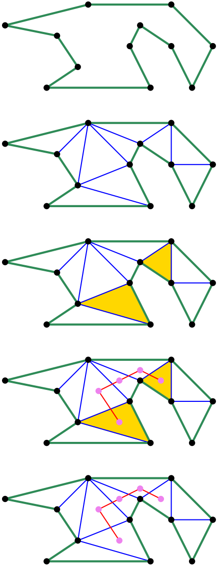
UNIV. SALZBURG
COMPUTERWISSENSCHAFTEN

LaTeX Beamer Class: Overlays in Conjunction with Ipe's Views



- Suppose that we want to explain a concept that requires to display similar figures repeatedly. E.g.,
  1. a polygon,
  2. its triangulation,
  3. two specific triangles,
  4. the triangles and a path between them, and
  5. only the path.
- Ipe allows to group contents of a figure into layers which can be turned on and off indvidually.
- An Ipe *view* is a list of layers that are turned on.
- When saved as a PDF file, each view becomes a single page in the PDF.
- Individual pages of such a PDF can be incorporated into a LaTeX "beamer" document by resorting to the `page` option of the `\includegraphics` command:
  `\includegraphics<1->[page=1,...]{views}`
  `\includegraphics<2->[page=2,...]{views}`

LaTeX Beamer Class: Overlays in Conjunction with Ipe's Views



- Suppose that we want to explain a concept that requires to display similar figures repeatedly. E.g.,
  1. a polygon,
  2. its triangulation,
  3. two specific triangles,
  4. the triangles and a path between them, and
  5. only the path.
- Ipe allows to group contents of a figure into layers which can be turned on and off indvidually.
- An Ipe *view* is a list of layers that are turned on.
- When saved as a `PDF` file, each view becomes a single page in the `PDF`.
- Individual pages of such a `PDF` can be incorporated into a LaTeX "beamer" document by resorting to the `page` option of the `\includegraphics` command:
  `\includegraphics<1->[page=1,...]{views}`
  `\includegraphics<2->[page=2,...]{views}`
- This makes it easy to "build" a figure or an animation, without (re-)drawing the figure multiple times.

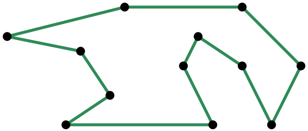
LaTeX Beamer Class: Overlays in Conjunction with Ipe's Views

```
\begin{columns}[c]
 \column{0.45\textwidth}
    \includegraphics<1|handout:0>[page=1]{views}%
    \includegraphics<2|handout:0>[page=2]{views}%
    \includegraphics<3|handout:0>[page=3]{views}%
    \includegraphics<4|handout:1>[page=4]{views}%
  \column{0.6\textwidth}
  \begin{enumerate}
    \item<1-> A polygon,
    \item<2-> its triangulation,
    \item<3-> two specific triangles, \only<4->{and}
    \item<4-> the triangles and a path between them.
  \end{enumerate}
\end{columns}
```

UNIV. SALZBURG
COMPUTERWISSENSCHAFTEN

LaTeX Beamer Class: Overlays in Conjunction with Ipe's Views

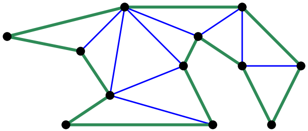
```
\begin{columns}[c]
 \column{0.45\textwidth}
    \includegraphics<1|handout:0>[page=1]{views}%
    \includegraphics<2|handout:0>[page=2]{views}%
    \includegraphics<3|handout:0>[page=3]{views}%
    \includegraphics<4|handout:1>[page=4]{views}%
  \column{0.6\textwidth}
  \begin{enumerate}
    \item<1-> A polygon,
    \item<2-> its triangulation,
    \item<3-> two specific triangles, \only<4->{and}
    \item<4-> the triangles and a path between them.
  \end{enumerate}
\end{columns}
```



1. A polygon,

LaTeX Beamer Class: Overlays in Conjunction with Ipe's Views

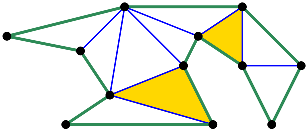
```
\begin{columns}[c]
 \column{0.45\textwidth}
    \includegraphics<1|handout:0>[page=1]{views}%
    \includegraphics<2|handout:0>[page=2]{views}%
    \includegraphics<3|handout:0>[page=3]{views}%
    \includegraphics<4|handout:1>[page=4]{views}%
  \column{0.6\textwidth}
  \begin{enumerate}
    \item<1-> A polygon,
    \item<2-> its triangulation,
    \item<3-> two specific triangles, \only<4->{and}
    \item<4-> the triangles and a path between them.
  \end{enumerate}
\end{columns}
```



1. A polygon,
2. its triangulation,

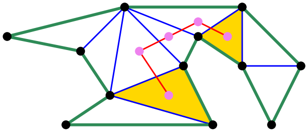
LaTeX Beamer Class: Overlays in Conjunction with Ipe's Views

```
\begin{columns}[c]
 \column{0.45\textwidth}
    \includegraphics<1|handout:0>[page=1]{views}%
    \includegraphics<2|handout:0>[page=2]{views}%
    \includegraphics<3|handout:0>[page=3]{views}%
    \includegraphics<4|handout:1>[page=4]{views}%
  \column{0.6\textwidth}
  \begin{enumerate}
    \item<1-> A polygon,
    \item<2-> its triangulation,
    \item<3-> two specific triangles, \only<4->{and}
    \item<4-> the triangles and a path between them.
  \end{enumerate}
\end{columns}
```



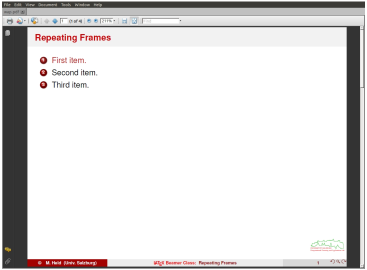
1. A polygon,
2. its triangulation,
3. two specific triangles,

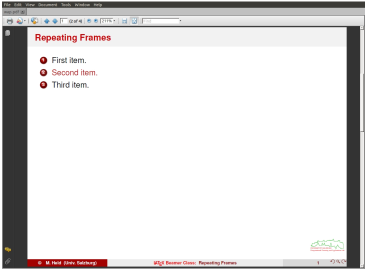
```
\begin{columns}[c]
 \column{0.45\textwidth}
    \includegraphics<1|handout:0>[page=1]{views}%
    \includegraphics<2|handout:0>[page=2]{views}%
    \includegraphics<3|handout:0>[page=3]{views}%
    \includegraphics<4|handout:1>[page=4]{views}%
  \column{0.6\textwidth}
  \begin{enumerate}
    \item<1-> A polygon,
    \item<2-> its triangulation,
    \item<3-> two specific triangles, \only<4->{and}
    \item<4-> the triangles and a path between them.
  \end{enumerate}
\end{columns}
```

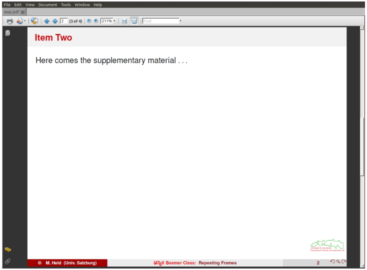


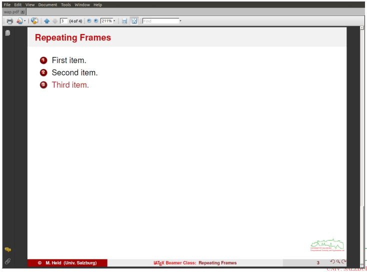
1. A polygon,
2. its triangulation,
3. two specific triangles, and
4. the triangles and a path between them.

LaTeX Beamer Class: Repeating Frames









UNIV. SALZBURG
COMPUTERWISSENSCHAFTEN

LaTeX Beamer Class: Repeating Frames

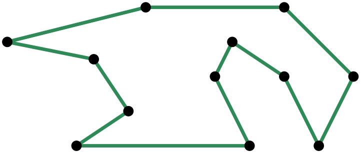
- The following LaTeX code produces the four slides shown on the previous slide:

```
\begin{frame}<1-2>[label=myframe]\frametitle{Repeating Frames}
  \begin{enumerate}
    \item<alert@1> First item.
    \item<alert@2> Second item.
    \item<alert@3> Third item.
  \end{enumerate}
\end{frame}
```

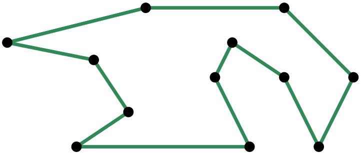
```
\begin{frame}\frametitle{Item Two}
  Here comes the supplementary material $\ldots$
\end{frame}
```

```
\againframe<3>{myframe}
```

LaTeX Beamer Class: Animations

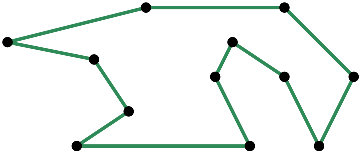


LaTeX Beamer Class: Animations



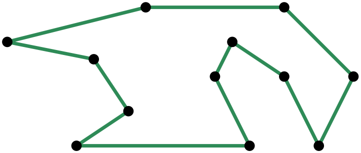
- For an *n*-page `PDF` file `foo.pdf`:

  `\animategraphics[autoplay,loop]{fps}{foo}{0}{n-1}`



- For an *n*-page PDF file `foo.pdf`:

  `\animategraphics[autoplay,loop]{fps}{foo}{0}{n-1}`
- A series of PNG images can be animated similarly.



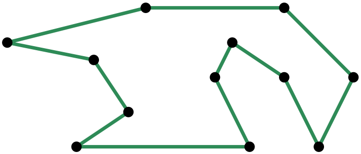
- For an *n*-page PDF file `foo.pdf`:

  `\animategraphics[autoplay,loop]{fps}{foo}{0}{n-1}`
- A series of `PNG` images can be animated similarly.
- An animated `GIF` needs to be converted into individual `PNG` images:

  `convert -coalesce foo.gif foo.png`

UNIV. SALZBURG
COMPUTERWISSENSCHAFTEN

LaTeX Beamer Class: Animations



- For an *n*-page PDF file `foo.pdf`:

  `\animategraphics[autoplay,loop]{fps}{foo}{0}{n-1}`
- A series of `PNG` images can be animated similarly.
- An animated `GIF` needs to be converted into individual `PNG` images:

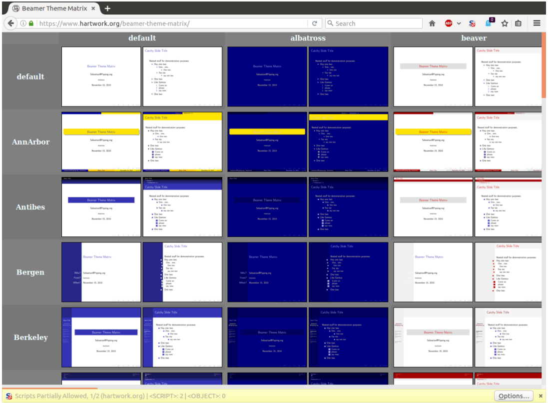
  `convert -coalesce foo.gif foo.png`
- The use of `animategraphics` requires the `animate` package to be loaded in the preamble.

LaTeX Beamer Class: Themes

- The visual appearance of slides can be influenced by choosing among multiple pre-defined layouts and coloring schemes.
- Combinations and personal customizations of the pre-defined options allow to create a virtually unlimited variety of layouts.

LaTeX Beamer Class: Themes

- The visual appearance of slides can be influenced by choosing among multiple pre-defined layouts and coloring schemes.
- Combinations and personal customizations of the pre-defined options allow to create a virtually unlimited variety of layouts.
- A great survey of the basic combinations is provided by the Beamer Theme Matrix, `www.hartwork.org/beamer-theme-matrix`.



UNIV. SALZBURG
COMPUTERWISSENSCHAFTEN

LaTeX Beamer Class: Themes

- These slides and handouts were generated with the following setting:

```
\ifdefined\ishandout
\documentclass[handout,...options...]{beamer}
  \usetheme{default}
  \usecolortheme{dove}
  \usecolortheme[named=BrickRed]{structure}
%  \usepackage{pgfpages}
%  \pgfpagesuselayout{4 on 1}[border shrink=5mm,landscape]
\else \ifdefined\nopause
\documentclass[handout,...options...]{beamer}
  \usetheme{Madrid}
  \usecolortheme{beaver}
  \usecolortheme[named=BrickRed]{structure}
\else
\documentclass[...options...]{beamer}
  \usetheme{Madrid}
  \usecolortheme{beaver}
  \usecolortheme[named=BrickRed]{structure}
\fi\fi
```

LaTeX Beamer Class: Themes

- These slides and handouts were generated with the following setting:

```
\ifdefined\ishandout
\documentclass[handout,...options...]{beamer}
  \usetheme{default}
  \usecolortheme{dove}
  \usecolortheme[named=BrickRed]{structure}
%  \usepackage{pgfpages}
%  \pgfpagesuselayout{4 on 1}[border shrink=5mm,landscape]
\else \ifdefined\nopause
\documentclass[handout,...options...]{beamer}
  \usetheme{Madrid}
  \usecolortheme{beaver}
  \usecolortheme[named=BrickRed]{structure}
\else
\documentclass[...options...]{beamer}
  \usetheme{Madrid}
  \usecolortheme{beaver}
  \usecolortheme[named=BrickRed]{structure}
\fi\fi
```

- LaTeX commands: `pdflatex "\def\ishandout{1} \input{wap}"` or `pdflatex "\def\nopause{1} \input{wap}"` or simply `pdflatex wap`.

UNIV. SALZBURG
COMPUTERWISSENSCHAFTEN

4 pdfLaTeX and the Generation of Slides

- Portable Data Format (PDF)
- pdfTeX and pdfLaTeX
- Generating PDF Slides: LaTeX Beamer Class
- Current LaTeX-Related Projects
  - Future Developments
  - Collaborative LaTeX Environments

UNIV. SALZBURG
COMPUTERWISSENSCHAFTEN

The Future of pdfLaTeX

- Work on pdfLaTeX has mostly been finished, and future releases should be expected to contain only bug fixes.

UNIV. SALZBURG
COMPUTERWISSENSCHAFTEN

The Future of pdfLaTeX

- Work on pdfLaTeX has mostly been finished, and future releases should be expected to contain only bug fixes.
- LuaTeX/LuaLaTeX:
  - It has been adopted as the official successor of pdfLaTeX.
  - Based on the Lua scripting engine.
  - It supports multi-directional typesetting.
  - A variety of fonts can be accessed via a library based on FontForge.
  - Logos obtained as `\LuaTeX` and `\LuaLaTeX`, as provided by the `metalogo` package.

UNIV. SALZBURG
COMPUTERWISSENSCHAFTEN

- Work on pdfLaTeX has mostly been finished, and future releases should be expected to contain only bug fixes.
- LuaTeX/LuaLaTeX:
  - It has been adopted as the official successor of pdfLaTeX.
  - Based on the Lua scripting engine.
  - It supports multi-directional typesetting.
  - A variety of fonts can be accessed via a library based on FontForge.
  - Logos obtained as `\LuaTeX` and `\LuaLaTeX`, as provided by the `metalogo` package.
- XeTeX/XeLaTeX:
  - It is a recent development that supports Unicode in a native way and that can use any font installed on the system, with no extra configurations needed.
  - Its input files are assumed to be in UTF-8 encoding.
  - It also supports more advanced typographic features than pdfLaTeX.
  - It is included in the TeX Live, MiKTeX, and MacTeX bundles.
  - Logos obtained as `\XeTeX` and `\XeLaTeX`, as provided by the `metalogo` package.

UNIV. SALZBURG
COMPUTERWISSENSCHAFTEN

Overleaf

- Overleaf, https://www.overleaf.com, is a cloud-based academic writing environment that supports collaborative work.
- It is based on LaTeX, with LaTeX being run in the background as one enters new text.
- No local LaTeX installation is needed.

Overleaf

- Overleaf, https://www.overleaf.com, is a cloud-based academic writing environment that supports collaborative work.
- It is based on LaTeX, with LaTeX being run in the background as one enters new text.
- No local LaTeX installation is needed.
- Overleaf also provides a decent Rich Text editor that can be used to enter text in a WYSIWYG environment, even if one knows no or only very little LaTeX. Still, one can switch back to the actual LaTeX code at any time.

Overleaf

- Overleaf, https://www.overleaf.com, is a cloud-based academic writing environment that supports collaborative work.
- It is based on LaTeX, with LaTeX being run in the background as one enters new text.
- No local LaTeX installation is needed.
- Overleaf also provides a decent Rich Text editor that can be used to enter text in a WYSIWYG environment, even if one knows no or only very little LaTeX. Still, one can switch back to the actual LaTeX code at any time.
- The basic full version is free but it allows only one collaborator per project. Furthermore the free version imposes some limitations on the number of projects and on the storage provided.
- Premium (pay-per-month) plans allow more collaborators per project and come with additional features, such as a synchronization with DropBox or GitHub.

UNIV. SALZBURG
COMPUTERWISSENSCHAFTEN

CoCalc

- CoCalc, https://cocalc.com, is a cloud-based computing platform designed for collaborative computational mathematics and academic writing.
- It is part of the open-source SageMath project (http://www.sagemath.org/).
- Run in an Ubuntu Linux environment, and accessed via standard web browers.
- Supports collaborative work on LaTeX documents, with a revision control system, and with pdfLaTeX to create PDF output. Similar to Google Docs.

CoCalc

- CoCalc, https://cocalc.com, is a cloud-based computing platform designed for collaborative computational mathematics and academic writing.
- It is part of the open-source SageMath project (http://www.sagemath.org/).
- Run in an Ubuntu Linux environment, and accessed via standard web browers.
- Supports collaborative work on LaTeX documents, with a revision control system, and with pdfLaTeX to create PDF output. Similar to Google Docs.
- Allows the use of several mathematical software packages, such as R, Maxima, Octave (which is syntax-compatible with MATLAB).
- Offers a Linux terminal, which provides access to standard Linux tools and programming languagess, e.g., C/C++, Java, Perl, Ruby.
- All files are backed up every few minutes to Google's cloud storage.

SyncTeX

- Written by Jérôme Laurens, and distributed with the TEX Live and MiKTEX distributions.
- It enables the synchronization between a LATEX source document and the PDF output: If supported by the editor/viewer, then one can click in the source and jump to the equivalent place in the PDF, or click in the PDF and jump to the appropriate place in the source.

SyncTeX

- Written by Jérôme Laurens, and distributed with the TEX Live and MiKTEX distributions.
- It enables the synchronization between a LATEX source document and the PDF output: If supported by the editor/viewer, then one can click in the source and jump to the equivalent place in the PDF, or click in the PDF and jump to the appropriate place in the source.
- SyncTEX creates additional files that support this synchronization.
- Since these files may become quite large it is advisable to request a compression (by means of `gzip`) by passing the run-time option `--synctex=1` to pdfLATEX (or some other LATEX engine that supports SyncTEX). Alternatively, one can put `\synctex=1` into the preamble of the LATEX document.
- The run-time option `--synctex=-1` also envokes SyncTEX but disables compression.

SyncTeX

- Written by Jérôme Laurens, and distributed with the TEX Live and MiKTEX distributions.
- It enables the synchronization between a LATEX source document and the PDF output: If supported by the editor/viewer, then one can click in the source and jump to the equivalent place in the PDF, or click in the PDF and jump to the appropriate place in the source.
- SyncTEX creates additional files that support this synchronization.
- Since these files may become quite large it is advisable to request a compression (by means of `gzip`) by passing the run-time option `--synctex=1` to pdfLATEX (or some other LATEX engine that supports SyncTEX). Alternatively, one can put `\synctex=1` into the preamble of the LATEX document.
- The run-time option `--synctex=-1` also envokes SyncTEX but disables compression.
- The `evince` viewer works with SyncTEX, and editors known to support SyncTEX comprise `gedit` and `vim` (if a Python script from the plugin for `gedit` is used).

SyncTeX

- Written by Jérôme Laurens, and distributed with the TEX Live and MiKTEX distributions.
- It enables the synchronization between a LATEX source document and the PDF output: If supported by the editor/viewer, then one can click in the source and jump to the equivalent place in the PDF, or click in the PDF and jump to the appropriate place in the source.
- SyncTEX creates additional files that support this synchronization.
- Since these files may become quite large it is advisable to request a compression (by means of `gzip`) by passing the run-time option `--synctex=1` to pdfLATEX (or some other LATEX engine that supports SyncTEX). Alternatively, one can put `\synctex=1` into the preamble of the LATEX document.
- The run-time option `--synctex=-1` also envokes SyncTEX but disables compression.
- The `evince` viewer works with SyncTEX, and editors known to support SyncTEX comprise `gedit` and `vim` (if a Python script from the plugin for `gedit` is used).
- SyncTEX does not (yet) work fully in conjunction with the LATEX beamer package.

UNIV. SALZBURG
COMPUTERWISSENSCHAFTEN

5 Mathematica for Symbolic Computation

5 **Mathematica for Symbolic Computation**

UNIV. SALZBURG
COMPUTERWISSENSCHAFTEN

- Mathematica is a software package – "*computer algebra system*" (CAS) – for use in mathematical applications that require symbolic computation.
- It was conceived by Stephen Wolfram, starting in late 1986, and has been developed by Wolfram Research at Champaign (IL, USA).

Basics of Mathematica

- Mathematica is a software package – "*computer algebra system*" (CAS) – for use in mathematical applications that require symbolic computation.
- It was conceived by Stephen Wolfram, starting in late 1986, and has been developed by Wolfram Research at Champaign (IL, USA).
- It can be used as a scientific calculator, but can also perform operations on functions, manipulate algebraic formulae, and do calculus.
- It also provides graphics capabilities, and can produce two- and three-dimensional graphs.
- It is widely used in science and engineering.

UNIV. SALZBURG
COMPUTERWISSENSCHAFTEN

Basics of Mathematica

- Mathematica is a software package – "*computer algebra system*" (CAS) – for use in mathematical applications that require symbolic computation.
- It was conceived by Stephen Wolfram, starting in late 1986, and has been developed by Wolfram Research at Champaign (IL, USA).
- It can be used as a scientific calculator, but can also perform operations on functions, manipulate algebraic formulae, and do calculus.
- It also provides graphics capabilities, and can produce two- and three-dimensional graphs.
- It is widely used in science and engineering.
- It provides an interface to LaTeX, and it can output data in a variety of graphics formats such as encapsulated PostScript, GIF, etc.
- It can be interfaced with external programs: it can invoke external programs, and it can be invoked by external programs.

Basics of Mathematica

- Mathematica is a software package – "*computer algebra system*" (CAS) – for use in mathematical applications that require symbolic computation.
- It was conceived by Stephen Wolfram, starting in late 1986, and has been developed by Wolfram Research at Champaign (IL, USA).
- It can be used as a scientific calculator, but can also perform operations on functions, manipulate algebraic formulae, and do calculus.
- It also provides graphics capabilities, and can produce two- and three-dimensional graphs.
- It is widely used in science and engineering.
- It provides an interface to LaTeX, and it can output data in a variety of graphics formats such as encapsulated PostScript, GIF, etc.
- It can be interfaced with external programs: it can invoke external programs, and it can be invoked by external programs.
- Mathematica is a commercial product, and it is available for a variety of platforms.
- Student licenses for "work at home" can be obtained via the web page of PLUS ITServices:
  See https://it-info.sbg.ac.at/index.php?title=SoftwareStudierende.

Other Packages for Symbolic Computation

- Maple: By MapleSoft, Waterloo (ON, Canada); https://www.maplesoft.com/
- Maxima: Based on MIT's legendary Macsyma; http://maxima.sourceforge.net/
- Axiom: By T. Daly, Pittsburgh (PA, USA); http://axiom.axiom-developer.org
- Magma: By Computational Algebra Group, U. Sidney (Australia), http://magma.maths.usyd.edu.au/magma/
- MATLAB: Via the MuPAD symbolic engine, by MathWorks, Natick (MA, USA); https://www.mathworks.com/products/matlab.html
- SageMath: By W. Stein, U. Washington (WA, USA); http://www.sagemath.org/
- ...

User Interface

- Mathematica can run in an *ASCII terminal mode*, or it can display *notebooks* as an *X11 client*.
- To run Mathematica from an ASCII terminal, enter `math`. To run Mathematica as an X11 client, enter `mathematica`.
- Both display variants are front ends to Mathematica's *kernel*, which takes care of the actual computations.

UNIV. SALZBURG
COMPUTERWISSENSCHAFTEN

User Interface

- Mathematica can run in an *ASCII terminal mode*, or it can display *notebooks* as an *X11 client*.
- To run Mathematica from an ASCII terminal, enter `math`. To run Mathematica as an X11 client, enter `mathematica`.
- Both display variants are front ends to Mathematica's *kernel*, which takes care of the actual computations.
- Note: One has to press `SHIFT RET` in order to invoke a computation after keying in a command!

UNIV. SALZBURG
COMPUTERWISSENSCHAFTEN

User Interface

- Mathematica can run in an *ASCII terminal mode*, or it can display *notebooks* as an *X11 client*.
- To run Mathematica from an ASCII terminal, enter `math`. To run Mathematica as an X11 client, enter `mathematica`.
- Both display variants are front ends to Mathematica's *kernel*, which takes care of the actual computations.
- Note: One has to press `SHIFT RET` in order to invoke a computation after keying in a command!
- Mathematica can handle very large numbers. If a number is so large that it cannot be displayed on one line, Mathematica places a backslash (\) at the end of the line to show that the number continues on the next line.

User Interface

- Mathematica can run in an *ASCII terminal mode*, or it can display *notebooks* as an *X11 client*.
- To run Mathematica from an ASCII terminal, enter `math`. To run Mathematica as an X11 client, enter `mathematica`.
- Both display variants are front ends to Mathematica's *kernel*, which takes care of the actual computations.
- Note: One has to press `SHIFT RET` in order to invoke a computation after keying in a command!
- Mathematica can handle very large numbers. If a number is so large that it cannot be displayed on one line, Mathematica places a backslash (\) at the end of the line to show that the number continues on the next line.
- Calculations that take too long can be aborted by typing `ALT ,` (in a notebook environment), or `CTRL c` (in terminal mode).

UNIV. SALZBURG
COMPUTERWISSENSCHAFTEN

- Mathematica can run in an *ASCII terminal mode*, or it can display *notebooks* as an *X11 client*.
- To run Mathematica from an ASCII terminal, enter `math`. To run Mathematica as an X11 client, enter `mathematica`.
- Both display variants are front ends to Mathematica's *kernel*, which takes care of the actual computations.
- Note: One has to press `SHIFT RET` in order to invoke a computation after keying in a command!
- Mathematica can handle very large numbers. If a number is so large that it cannot be displayed on one line, Mathematica places a backslash (\) at the end of the line to show that the number continues on the next line.
- Calculations that take too long can be aborted by typing `ALT ,` (in a notebook environment), or `CTRL c` (in terminal mode).
- Mathematica offers several *palettes* for facilitating the input of characters and symbols.
- Functions can often be entered via *templates*, and `TAB` can be used for moving among *placeholders*.
- Many symbols can also be entered directly. E.g., `ESC p ESC` will generate π.

Basic Math in Mathematica

- A semicolon (`;`) after an expression instructs Mathematica not to print the result.

- A semicolon (`;`) after an expression instructs Mathematica not to print the result.
- Mathematica labels its input and output as `In[`n`]` and `Out[`n`]`, where n is a counter that is stepped for every input/output pair.

```
In[1] :=  3 + 5
Out[1] =  8
```

- A semicolon (`;`) after an expression instructs Mathematica not to print the result.
- Mathematica labels its input and output as `In[`*n*`]` and `Out[`*n*`]`, where *n* is a counter that is stepped for every input/output pair.

$$\texttt{In[1]} := 3 + 5$$
$$\texttt{Out[1]} = 8$$

- One can refer to the last output generated as `%`. A string of *k* percent signs refers to the *k*-th previous output, and `%`*n* refers to the output numbered *n*.

$$\texttt{In[2]} := \% + 3^2$$
$$\texttt{Out[2]} = 17$$

$$\texttt{In[3]} := \% - 2 * \%1$$
$$\texttt{Out[3]} = 1$$

UNIV. SALZBURG
COMPUTERWISSENSCHAFTEN

- Mathematica distinguishes between two types of values, *exact* and *approximate*.
  - Exact values may either be (a) integers or fractions, in which case Mathematica keeps as many digits as necessary to express the value exactly, or (b) symbolic names for constants such as e, π, $\sqrt{2}$, for which Mathematica knows how to find as many digits as necessary in any computation.

Basic Math in Mathematica

- Mathematica distinguishes between two types of values, *exact* and *approximate*.
  - Exact values may either be (a) integers or fractions, in which case Mathematica keeps as many digits as necessary to express the value exactly, or (b) symbolic names for constants such as e, π, $\sqrt{2}$, for which Mathematica knows how to find as many digits as necessary in any computation.
  - Approximate values are most typically numeric expressions containing a decimal point.

Basic Math in Mathematica

- Mathematica distinguishes between two types of values, *exact* and *approximate*.
  - Exact values may either be (a) integers or fractions, in which case Mathematica keeps as many digits as necessary to express the value exactly, or (b) symbolic names for constants such as e, π, $\sqrt{2}$, for which Mathematica knows how to find as many digits as necessary in any computation.
  - Approximate values are most typically numeric expressions containing a decimal point.
- An exact value of x can be converted to an n-digit approximate value by calling the function $\mathrm{N}[x, n]$.

```
In[4]  :=  N[% + π, 20]
Out[4] =   4.1415926535897932385
```

Basic Math in Mathematica

- Mathematica distinguishes between two types of values, *exact* and *approximate*.
  - Exact values may either be (a) integers or fractions, in which case Mathematica keeps as many digits as necessary to express the value exactly, or (b) symbolic names for constants such as e, π, $\sqrt{2}$, for which Mathematica knows how to find as many digits as necessary in any computation.
  - Approximate values are most typically numeric expressions containing a decimal point.
- An exact value of x can be converted to an n-digit approximate value by calling the function $\mathrm{N}[x, n]$.

```
In[4]  :=  N[% + π, 20]
Out[4] =   4.1415926535897932385
```

Warning

Mathematica will apply inexact computation (and approximate all exact values) even if an expression contains just one approximate value!

- By convention, all names of built-in objects of Mathematica start with upper-case letters. Note that names can never start with a number.

Basic Math in Mathematica

- By convention, all names of built-in objects of Mathematica start with upper-case letters. Note that names can never start with a number.
- The *arithmetic operators* of Mathematica have standard calculator form ("$+$", "$-$", "$*$", "$/$", and "^") and have standard mathematical precedence. For instance, multiplication and division are executed before addition and subtraction.

UNIV. SALZBURG
COMPUTERWISSENSCHAFTEN

- By convention, all names of built-in objects of Mathematica start with upper-case letters. Note that names can never start with a number.
- The *arithmetic operators* of Mathematica have standard calculator form ("$+$", "$-$", "$*$", "$/$", and "ˆ") and have standard mathematical precedence. For instance, multiplication and division are executed before addition and subtraction.
- Mathematica accepts some non-standard input forms for arithmetic. E.g., the multiplication operator $*$ may be omitted so that the multiplication is implied.
- Note, however, that spaces are required if $*$ is omitted: x 2 is different from x2!

- By convention, all names of built-in objects of Mathematica start with upper-case letters. Note that names can never start with a number.
- The *arithmetic operators* of Mathematica have standard calculator form ("$+$", "$-$", "$*$", "$/$", and "^") and have standard mathematical precedence. For instance, multiplication and division are executed before addition and subtraction.
- Mathematica accepts some non-standard input forms for arithmetic. E.g., the multiplication operator $*$ may be omitted so that the multiplication is implied.
- Note, however, that spaces are required if $*$ is omitted: x 2 is different from x2!
- The expression $x = value$ assigns *value* to x.

UNIV. SALZBURG
COMPUTERWISSENSCHAFTEN

- By convention, all names of built-in objects of Mathematica start with upper-case letters. Note that names can never start with a number.
- The *arithmetic operators* of Mathematica have standard calculator form ("$+$", "$-$", "$*$", "$/$", and "^") and have standard mathematical precedence. For instance, multiplication and division are executed before addition and subtraction.
- Mathematica accepts some non-standard input forms for arithmetic. E.g., the multiplication operator $*$ may be omitted so that the multiplication is implied.
- Note, however, that spaces are required if $*$ is omitted: x 2 is different from x2!
- The expression $x = value$ assigns *value* to x.

Warning

Note that this is a *permanent assignment*, and Mathematica will substitute *value* in all subsequent occurrences of x, until or unless explicitly told otherwise.

UNIV. SALZBURG
COMPUTERWISSENSCHAFTEN

- Any value assigned to x can be removed via $x = .$ or $\mathrm{Clear}[x]$.

```
In[5] :=  x = 4
Out[5] =  4

In[6] :=  3 * √x
Out[6] =  6

In[7] :=  Clear[x]

In[8] :=  3 * √x
Out[8] =  3 √x
```

- Any value assigned to x can be removed via $x = .$ or $\mathrm{Clear}[x]$.

In[5] := $x = 4$
Out[5] = 4

In[6] := $3 * \sqrt{x}$
Out[6] = 6

In[7] := $\mathrm{Clear}[x]$

In[8] := $3 * \sqrt{x}$
Out[8] = $3\sqrt{x}$

Advice

In order to avoid mistakes, it is advisable to clear assignments as soon as they are no longer needed.

```
In[9]  := 123456789123456789 + 987654321987654321
Out[9]  = 1111111111111111110

In[10] := 40!
Out[10] = 815915283247897734345611269596115894272000000000

In[11] := Binomial[5, 2]
Out[11] = 10

In[12] := x = N[π]
Out[12] = 3.14159

In[13] := Sin[π]
Out[13] = 0

In[14] := Sin[x]
Out[14] = 1.22465 10^-16
```

Mathematica as a Scientific Calculator

```
In[15]  :=
```
$1.0 / (\mathrm{Sin}[x] \text{ ^ } 1000)$

```
Out[15]  =
```
$9.75322579165\,10^{15911}$

```
In[16]  :=
```
$x = 1/3 + 1/5$

```
Out[16]  =
```
$\frac{8}{15}$

```
In[17]  :=
```
$(15\,x)/8$

```
Out[17]  =
```
1

```
In[18]  :=
```
$\mathrm{Clear}[x]$

```
In[19]  :=
```
$\sqrt[6]{64}$

```
Out[19]  =
```
2

```
In[20]  :=
```
$\pi\text{^}2 / 6.$

```
Out[20]  =
```
1.64493

UNIV. SALZBURG
COMPUTERWISSENSCHAFTEN

Lists as Mathematica Objects

- Many Mathematica objects are based on *lists*. Also, most operations can be applied to whole lists, which get treated as single objects.

In[21] := $x = \{2, 3, 4\}$
Out[21] = $\{2, 3, 4\}$

In[22] := x^2
Out[22] = $\{4, 9, 16\}$

UNIV. SALZBURG
COMPUTERWISSENSCHAFTEN

- Many Mathematica objects are based on *lists*. Also, most operations can be applied to whole lists, which get treated as single objects.

```
In[21] :=  x = {2, 3, 4}
Out[21] =  {2,3,4}

In[22] :=  x^2
Out[22] =  {4,9,16}
```

- The commands $\mathrm{Part}[x, i]$ and $x[[i]]$ extract the i-th element of the list x.

```
In[23] :=  x
Out[23] =  {2,3,4}

In[24] :=  x[[2]] = 10
Out[24] =  10
```

Lists as Mathematica Objects

- The commands $\mathrm{Part}[x, i]$ and $x[[i]]$ extract the i-th element of the list x.

```
In[25] :=  x
Out[25] =  {2, 10, 4}

In[26] :=  x[[1]] + x[[2]] + x[[3]]
Out[26] =  16
```

- The commands $\mathrm{Part}[x, i]$ and $x[[i]]$ extract the i-th element of the list x.

```
In[25]  :=  x
Out[25]  =  {2, 10, 4}

In[26]  :=  x[[1]] + x[[2]] + x[[3]]
Out[26]  =  16
```

- Typically, parentheses `()` are used for grouping, brackets `[]` enclose function arguments, curly braces `{}` delimite lists, and double brackets `[[]]` are used for indexing.

- Vectors and matrices are lists and lists of lists, respectively.

```
In[27] :=
```
$m[x\_] := \{\{\mathrm{Cos}[x], -\mathrm{Sin}[x], 0\}, \{\mathrm{Sin}[x], \mathrm{Cos}[x], 0\}, \{0, 0, 1\}\}$

```
In[28] :=
```
$\mathrm{MatrixForm}[m[x]]$

```
Out[28] =
```
$$\begin{pmatrix} \mathrm{Cos}[x] & -\mathrm{Sin}[x] & 0 \\ \mathrm{Sin}[x] & \mathrm{Cos}[x] & 0 \\ 0 & 0 & 1 \end{pmatrix}$$

```
In[29] :=
```
$\mathrm{Simplify}[\mathrm{Det}[m[x]]]$

```
Out[29] =
```
1

```
In[30] :=
```
$\mathrm{Transpose}[m[x]]$

```
Out[30] =
```
$\{\{\mathrm{Cos}[x], \mathrm{Sin}[x], 0\}, \{-\mathrm{Sin}[x], \mathrm{Cos}[x], 0\}, \{0, 0, 1\}\}$

UNIV. SALZBURG
COMPUTERWISSENSCHAFTEN

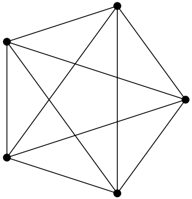
- Vectors and matrices are lists and lists of lists, respectively.

```
In[31] :=  Dimensions[m[x]]
Out[31] =  {3,3}

In[32] :=  v = {1, 0, 1}
Out[32] =  {1,0,1}

In[33] :=  w = m[π/2] . v
Out[33] =  {0,1,1}

In[34] :=  Cross[v, w]
Out[34] =  {−1,−1,1}

In[35] :=  v. w
Out[35] =  1
```

- Mathematica can also deal with graphs and similar combinatorical entities.

`In[36] :=` CompleteGraph[5]

`Out[36] =`



`In[37] :=` MatrixForm[AdjacencyMatrix[%]]

`Out[37] =`

$$\begin{pmatrix} 0 & 1 & 1 & 1 & 1 \\ 1 & 0 & 1 & 1 & 1 \\ 1 & 1 & 0 & 1 & 1 \\ 1 & 1 & 1 & 0 & 1 \\ 1 & 1 & 1 & 1 & 0 \end{pmatrix}$$

UNIV. SALZBURG
COMPUTERWISSENSCHAFTEN

- Expand and Factor can be used for transforming algebraic expressions.

```
In[38]  :=  1 + x^2 - 2x
Out[38]  =  1 - 2 x + x^2

In[39]  :=  % * (2 + x)
Out[39]  =  (2 + x) (1 - 2 x + x^2)

In[40]  :=  Expand[%]
Out[40]  =  2 - 3 x + x^3

In[41]  :=  Factor[%]
Out[41]  =  (-1 + x)^2 (2 + x)

In[42]  :=  % /. {x -> 1}
Out[42]  =  0
```

- Expand and Factor can be used for transforming algebraic expressions.

In[43] := %% /. {x -> {a + 2}}
Out[43] = $\{(1+a)^2\,(4+a)\}$

In[44] := %%% * x/ ((x − 1)^3 * (x + 1))
Out[44] = $\frac{x\ (2+x)}{(-1+x)\ (1+x)}$

In[45] := Expand[%]
Out[45] = $\frac{2\ x}{(-1+x)\ (1+x)} + \frac{x^2}{(-1+x)\ (1+x)}$

In[46] := ExpandAll[%]
Out[46] = $\frac{2\ x}{-1+x^2} + \frac{x^2}{-1+x^2}$

Simplifying Algebraic Terms with Mathematica

- Getting expressions into a simple form sometimes is an art, and may require a bit of experimenting with Simplify and similar commands.

In[47] := Simplify[%]

Out[47] = $\frac{x\ (2+x)}{-1+x^2}$

In[48] := % * (y + 1) / (y - 1)

Out[48] = $\frac{x\ (2+x)\ (1+y)}{(-1+x^2)\ (-1+y)}$

In[49] := ExpandAll[%]

Out[49] = $\frac{2\ x}{1-x^2-y+x^2\ y}+\frac{x^2}{1-x^2-y+x^2\ y}+\frac{2\ x\ y}{1-x^2-y+x^2\ y}+\frac{x^2\ y}{1-x^2-y+x^2\ y}$

UNIV. SALZBURG
COMPUTERWISSENSCHAFTEN

- Getting expressions into a simple form sometimes is an art, and may require a bit of experimenting with Simplify and similar commands.

```
In[50] := % * (1 - x^2) (1 - y)
```

$$\text{Out[50]} = \left(\left(\frac{2\ x}{1-x^2-y+x^2\ y}+\frac{x^2}{1-x^2-y+x^2\ y}+\frac{2\ x\ y}{1-x^2-y+x^2\ y}+\frac{x^2\ y}{1-x^2-y+x^2\ y}\right)(1-x^2)\,(1-y)\right)$$

```
In[51] := Simplify[%]
```

$$\text{Out[51]} = x\,(2+x)\,(1+y)$$

```
In[52] := Expand[%]
```

$$\text{Out[52]} = 2\ x+x^2+2\ x\ y+x^2\ y$$

UNIV. SALZBURG
COMPUTERWISSENSCHAFTEN

- Getting expressions into a simple form sometimes is an art, and may require a bit of experimenting with Simplify and similar commands.

```
In[53] :=  FactorTerms[%, y]
Out[53] =  (2 x + x^2) (1 + y)

In[54] :=  Collect[Expand[%], y]
Out[54] =  2 x + x^2 + (2 x + x^2) y
```

5 Mathematica for Symbolic Computation

- Mathematica can handle differentiation and integration symbolically.

```
In[55]  :=  D[x (1 + x^4), x]
Out[55]  =  1 + 5 x^4
```

$\texttt{In[55] :=}\ \mathrm{D}[x\ (1\ +\ x\hat{}4),\ x]$

$\texttt{Out[55] =}\ 1 + 5\ x^4$

$\texttt{In[56] :=}\ \mathrm{D}[2x\ +\ x\hat{}2\ +\ (2\ x\ +\ x\hat{}2)\ y,\ y]$

$\texttt{Out[56] =}\ 2\ x + x^2$

$\texttt{In[57] :=}\ \mathrm{Integrate}[\%\ /\ (x\ +1),\ x]$

$\texttt{Out[57] =}\ x + \frac{x^2}{2} - \log[1 + x]$

$\texttt{In[58] :=}\ \mathrm{D}[\%,\ x]$

$\texttt{Out[58] =}\ 1 + x - \frac{1}{1+x}$

$\texttt{In[59] :=}\ \mathrm{Factor}[\%]$

$\texttt{Out[59] =}\ \frac{x\ (2+x)}{1+x}$

- Mathematica can handle differentiation and integration symbolically.

In[60] := $\mathrm{D}[f[x] \,/\, x,\ x]$
Out[60] = $-\frac{f[x]}{x^2} + \frac{f'[x]}{x}$

In[61] := $\mathrm{Integrate}[\%,\ x]$
Out[61] = $\frac{f[x]}{x}$

In[62] := $\mathrm{D}[x\hat{}y,\ x]$
Out[62] = $x^{-1+y}\ y$

In[63] := $\% \,/.\, \{y \rightarrow x\}$
Out[63] = x^x

- Of course, an integral need not always exist. Still, one may be able to get a numerical approximation of a corresponding definite integral.

```
In[64] :=  %
Out[64] =  x^x

In[65] :=  Integrate[%, x]
Out[65] =  ∫ x^x dx

In[66] :=  Integrate[%%, {x, 0, 1}]
Out[66] =  ∫_0^1 x^x dx

In[67] :=  N[%]
Out[67] =  0.783431

In[68] :=  D[%%%, x]
Out[68] =  x^x
```

Sums and Products

- Mathematica can also handle sums and products.

```
In[69]  :=  Sum[i, {i, 1, 5}]
Out[69]  =  15

In[70]  :=  Product[i, {i, 1, 5}]
Out[70]  =  120

In[71]  :=  Sum[Product[x + i, {i, 0, j}], {j, 0, 3}]
Out[71]  =  x + x (1 + x) + x (1 + x) (2 + x) + x (1 + x) (2 + x) (3 + x)

In[72]  :=  Expand[%]
Out[72]  =  10 x + 15 x^2 + 7 x^3 + x^4

In[73]  :=  Sum[1 / 2^i, {i, 0, ∞}]
Out[73]  =  2

In[74]  :=  D[x Sum[1 / 2^i, {i, 0, ∞}], x]
Out[74]  =  2
```

UNIV. SALZBURG
COMPUTERWISSENSCHAFTEN

- Mathematica can handle limits.

```
In[75] :=  Sin[x] / x
Out[75] =  Sin[x]/x

In[76] :=  % /. {x -> 0}
Out[76] =  Indeterminate

In[77] :=  Limit[%%, x-> 0]
Out[77] =  1
```

- Mathematica can handle ordinary differential equations.

```
In[78] :=  DSolve[ { y'[x] == a y[x] + 1, y[0] == 0}, y[x], x]
Out[78] =  {{y[x] → (-1+e^(a x))/a}}
```

$$\text{Out[78]} = \left\{\left\{y[x] \to \frac{-1+e^{a\,x}}{a}\right\}\right\}$$

UNIV. SALZBURG COMPUTERWISSENSCHAFTEN

- Mathematica can handle ordinary differential equations.

In[78] := $\text{DSolve}[\{\, y'[x] \;==\; a\, y[x] + 1,\; y[0] \;==\; 0\},\; y[x],\; x]$
Out[78] = $\{\{y[x] \to \frac{-1+e^{a\,x}}{a}\}\}$

- As of Version 9.0, Mathematica can also handle multi-dimensional calculus without the need to load additional packages.

In[79] := $\text{D}[\{\text{Sin}[\alpha], \text{Cos}[\alpha]\}, \alpha]$
Out[79] = $\{\text{Cos}[\alpha], -\text{Sin}[\alpha]\}$

In[80] := $\text{ArcLength}[\{\text{Sin}[\alpha], \text{Cos}[\alpha]\}, \{\alpha, 0, 2\pi\}]$
Out[80] = 2π

In[81] := $\text{Grad}[x^2 + y^2 + z^2, \{x, y, z\}]$
Out[81] = $\{2x, 2y, 2z\}$

5 Mathematica for Symbolic Computation

UNIV. SALZBURG
COMPUTERWISSENSCHAFTEN

- Mathematica provides the function `Solve` for computing symbolic solutions for equations.

```
In[82] :=  Solve[a x^2 + b x + c == 0, x]
```

$$\text{Out[82]} = \left\{\left\{x \to \frac{-b-\sqrt{b^2-4\ a\ c}}{2\ a}\right\}, \left\{x \to \frac{-b+\sqrt{b^2-4\ a\ c}}{2\ a}\right\}\right\}$$

UNIV. SALZBURG
COMPUTERWISSENSCHAFTEN

Symbolic Solutions for Equations

- Mathematica provides the function `Solve` for computing symbolic solutions for equations.

```
In[82] :=  Solve[a x^2 + b x + c == 0, x]
```
$$\texttt{Out[82]} = \left\{\left\{x \to \frac{-b-\sqrt{b^2-4\ a\ c}}{2\ a}\right\}, \left\{x \to \frac{-b+\sqrt{b^2-4\ a\ c}}{2\ a}\right\}\right\}$$

- The Mathematica command *expr/.rules* applies a list of rules to the expression *expr*.

```
In[83] :=  % /. {a -> 2, b -> 3, c -> 1/2}
```
$$\texttt{Out[83]} = \left\{\left\{x \to \tfrac{1}{4}\left(-3-\sqrt{5}\right)\right\}, \left\{x \to \tfrac{1}{4}\left(-3+\sqrt{5}\right)\right\}\right\}$$

```
In[84] :=  x /. %
```
$$\texttt{Out[84]} = \left\{\tfrac{1}{4}\left(-3-\sqrt{5}\right), \tfrac{1}{4}\left(-3+\sqrt{5}\right)\right\}$$

```
In[85] :=  %[[1]] * 4
```
$$\texttt{Out[85]} = -3-\sqrt{5}$$

Symbolic Solutions for Equations

- Mathematica provides the Solve function for computing symbolic solutions for equations.

```
In[86] := Solve[{x - y == 2, x + y == 0}, {x, y}]
Out[86] = {{x -> 1, y -> -1}}

In[87] := Eliminate[{x - y == 2, x + y == 0}, y]
Out[87] = x == 1

In[88] := Solve[Sin[x]^2 == a, x]
Out[88] = {{x -> -ArcSin[Sqrt[a]]}, {x -> ArcSin[Sqrt[a]]}}
```

UNIV. SALZBURG COMPUTERWISSENSCHAFTEN

- We can use Mathematica to solve recurrence relations.

```
In[89]  :=  RSolve[{a[n] == 2a[n - 1], a[1] == 1}, a[n], n]
Out[89]  =  {{a[n] → 2^(-1+n)}}

In[90]  :=  Table[a[n] /. First[%], {n, 12}]
Out[90]  =  {1, 2, 4, 8, 16, 32, 64, 128, 256, 512}
```

UNIV. SALZBURG
COMPUTERWISSENSCHAFTEN

- We can use Mathematica to solve recurrence relations.

```
In[89]  :=  RSolve[{a[n] == 2a[n-1], a[1] == 1}, a[n], n]
Out[89]  =  {{a[n] -> 2^(-1+n)}}

In[90]  :=  Table[a[n] /. First[%], {n, 12}]
Out[90]  =  {1, 2, 4, 8, 16, 32, 64, 128, 256, 512}
```

- We can also directly tabulate the first few Fibonacci numbers.

```
In[91]  :=
RecurrenceTable[{a[n] == a[n-1] + a[n-2], a[1] == 1, a[2] == 1}, a, {n, 10}]
Out[91]  =  {1, 1, 2, 3, 5, 8, 13, 21, 34, 55}

In[92]  :=  Table[Fibonacci[n], {n, 10}]
Out[92]  =  {1, 1, 2, 3, 5, 8, 13, 21, 34, 55}
```

5 Mathematica for Symbolic Computation

- Mathematica provides functions for computing numerical approximations of sums, products, and integrals.

```
In[93]  :=  Sum[1 / i^2, {i, 1, ∞}]
Out[93]  =  π^2/6

In[94]  :=  N[%]
Out[94]  =  1.64493

In[95]  :=  NSum[1 / i^2, {i, 1, ∞}]
Out[95]  =  1.64493

In[96]  :=  NIntegrate[ Sin[xy], {x, 0, 1}, {y, 0, x}]
Out[96]  =  0.119906
```

UNIV. SALZBURG
COMPUTERWISSENSCHAFTEN

- It can also solve a (system of) polynomial equation(s) numerically, or search for an approximate solution of an arbitrary equation.

```
In[97]  :=  Solve[ x^3 - √π x^2 == 0, x]
Out[97]  =  {{x → 0}, {x → 0}, {x → √π}}

In[98]  :=  NSolve[ x^3 - √π x^2 == 0, x]
Out[98]  =  {{x → 0.}, {x → 0.}, {x → 1.77245}}

In[99]  :=  FindRoot[ Sin[x] == x, {x, 0.001}]
Out[99]  =  {x → 0.}
```

UNIV. SALZBURG
COMPUTERWISSENSCHAFTEN

5 Mathematica for Symbolic Computation

UNIV. SALZBURG
COMPUTERWISSENSCHAFTEN

- Mathematica lets one define functions that can then be used similar to built-in functions.

```
In[100]  :=  Expand[ Product[ x + i, {i , 1, 3}]]
Out[100]  =  6 + 11 x + 6 x^2 + x^3

In[101]  :=  exprod[n_] := Expand[ Product[ x + i, {i , 1, n}]]
In[102]  :=  exprod[3]
Out[102]  =  6 + 11 x + 6 x^2 + x^3

In[103]  :=  D[exprod[3], x]
Out[103]  =  11 + 12 x + 3 x^2

In[104]  :=  cex[n_, i_] := ( t = exprod[n]; Coefficient[t, x^i] )
In[105]  :=  cex[3, 2]
Out[105]  =  6
```

- Mathematica lets one define functions that can then be used similar to built-in functions.

```
In[106]  :=  Clear[cex]
In[107]  :=  t
Out[107] =   6 + 11 x + 6 x^2 + x^3
```

UNIV. SALZBURG
COMPUTERWISSENSCHAFTEN

- Mathematica lets one define functions that can then be used similar to built-in functions.

```
In[106]  :=  Clear[cex]
In[107]  :=  t
Out[107]  =  6 + 11 x + 6 x^2 + x^3
```

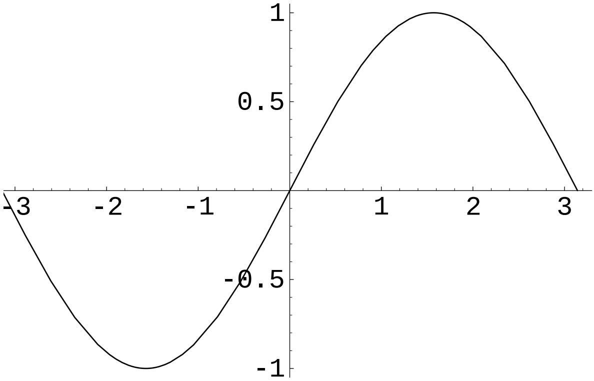
- This is not quite what we expected and want ...
- We resort to a module to encapsulate the local variable.

```
In[108]  :=  Clear[t]
In[109]  :=  cex[n_, i_] := Module[{t}, t = exprod[n]; Coefficient[t, x^i]]
In[110]  :=  cex[3, 2]
Out[110]  =  6

In[111]  :=  t
Out[111]  =  t
```

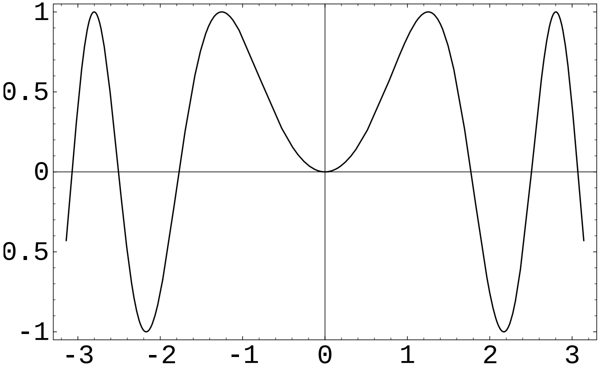
UNIV. SALZBURG
COMPUTERWISSENSCHAFTEN

- `Plot` offers many features for drawing 2D graphs.

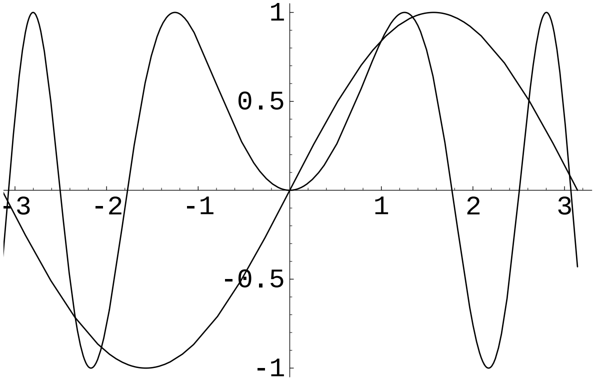
`In[112] :=` $p1 = \mathrm{Plot}[\,\mathrm{Sin}[x],\ \{x,\ -\pi,\ \pi\}]$



- `In[113] :=` $p2 = \mathrm{Plot}[\,\mathrm{Sin}[x\hat{}2],\ \{x,\ -\pi,\ \pi\},\ \mathrm{Frame} \text{->}\ \mathrm{True}]$

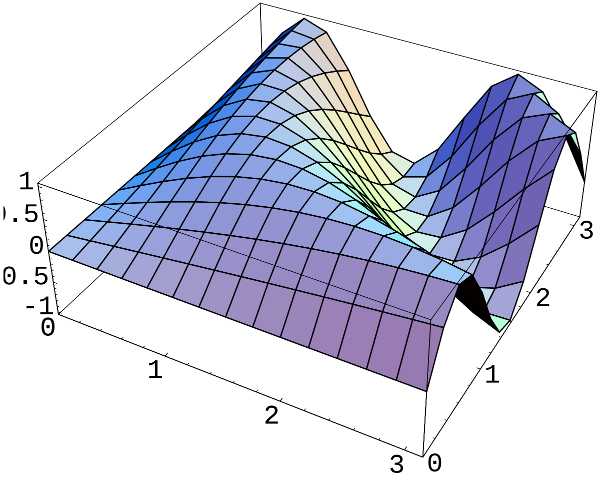


- `In[114] :=` $p3 = \text{Show}[p1, p2]$



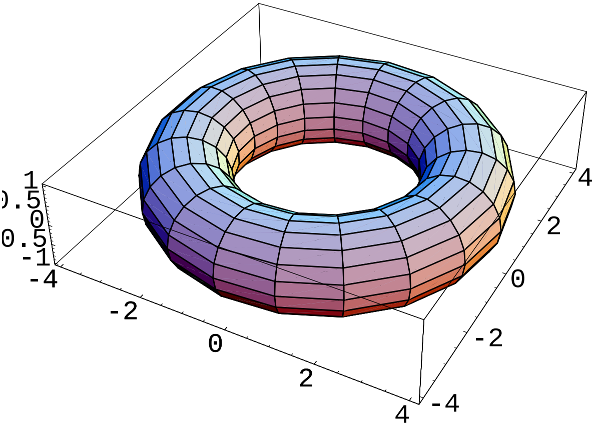
- Mathematica can also handle 3D plots.

In[115] := Plot3D[Sin[x y], {x, 0, π}, {y, 0, π}]



- Mathematica can also handle 3D plots.

```
In[116] :=  torus = ParametricPlot3D[
            {Cos[t] (3 + Cos[u]), Sin[t] (3 + Cos[u]), Sin[u]},
            {t, 0, 2π}, {u, 0, 2π}]
```

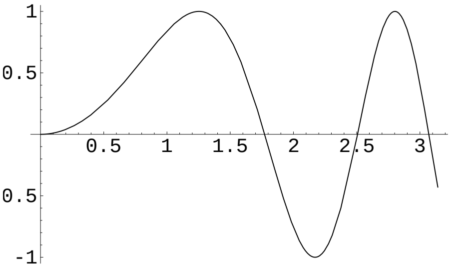


5 Mathematica for Symbolic Computation

UNIV. SALZBURG
COMPUTERWISSENSCHAFTEN

- Mathematica can export a plot as a graphics file. Supported formats include, among others, EPS, PDF, GIF, TIFF, PBM.

In[117] := Plot[Sin [x^2], {x, 0, π}]

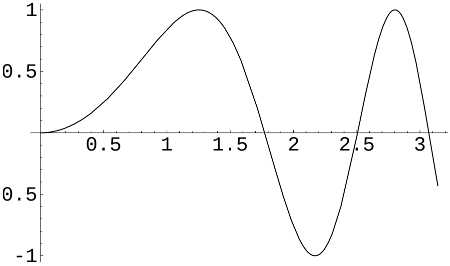


Out[117] =

In[118] := Export["*foo.eps*", %, "*EPS*"]

- Mathematica can export a plot as a graphics file. Supported formats include, among others, EPS, PDF, GIF, TIFF, PBM.

```
In[117] :=   Plot[ Sin [x^2], {x, 0, π}]
```




```
Out[117] =
```

```
In[118] :=   Export["foo.eps", %, "EPS"]
```

- (Portions of) Mathematica notebooks can also be printed as PostScript files. See Mathematica's `print` menu.

Exporting Mathematica Output

- Mathematica can export expressions in C or Fortran format. (C macros are defined in Mathematica's file `mdefs.h`.)

In[119] := $t = (x\hat{\ }2 - 1) \,/\, \sqrt{x - 1}$

Out[119] = $\frac{-1+x^2}{\sqrt{-1+x}}$

In[120] := CForm[t]

Out[120] = `(-1 + Power(x,2))/Sqrt(-1 + x)`

In[121] := FortranForm[t]

Out[121] = `(-1 + x**2)/Sqrt(-1 + x)`

UNIV. SALZBURG
COMPUTERWISSENSCHAFTEN

Exporting Mathematica Output

- Mathematica can export expressions in $\TeX$-format, too.

```
In[122]  :=  t
Out[122]  =  (-1+x^2)/Sqrt[-1+x]
```

$$\texttt{Out[122]} = \frac{-1+x^2}{\sqrt{-1+x}}$$

```
In[123]  :=  TeXForm[t]
Out[123]  =  \frac{-1 + x^2}{\sqrt{-1 + x}}
```

UNIV. SALZBURG
COMPUTERWISSENSCHAFTEN

Exporting Mathematica Output

- Mathematica can export expressions in $\TeX$-format, too.

```
In[122] :=  t
Out[122] =  (-1+x^2)/Sqrt[-1+x]
```

$$\texttt{In[122] :=}\quad t$$
$$\texttt{Out[122] =}\quad \frac{-1+x^2}{\sqrt{-1+x}}$$

$$\texttt{In[123] :=}\quad \mathrm{TeXForm}[t]$$

```
Out[123] = \frac{-1 + x^2}{\sqrt{-1 + x}}
```

- Also, Mathematica can export a notebook (or portions thereof) as a LaTeX-file. This LaTeX-file contains macros defined in Mathematica's style file `notebook.sty`. (This is the way all the Mathematica expressions of this document were generated.) See the `TeXSave` command for details.
- Personal experience tells me that the LaTeX-output generated by Mathematica needs a bit of manual polishing in order for LaTeX to digest it, and to format it neatly.

UNIV. SALZBURG
COMPUTERWISSENSCHAFTEN

- Bi-directional communication between Mathematica and an application program is supported by the *MathLink* standard. See the manual for details.
- Mathematica can be instructed to generate output suitable for display by Geomview. (The file `OOGL.m` is provided by Geomview.)

```
In[124] := << OOGL.m
In[125] := WriteOOGL["m_torus.off", torus]
```

- One can also use Geomview directly for displaying Mathematica graphics. The `Geomview` command invokes Geomview and sends the graphics to Geomview as an OOGL object. (For some reason, this does not work in our environment!)

5 Mathematica for Symbolic Computation

- We use Mathematica for plotting a Bézier curve.

`In[126] :=` $pnts =$
$\{\{0,0\},\{0,1\},\{1,3\},\{3,3\},\{5,0\},\{7,1\},\{8,2\},\{7,3\},\{5,4\},\{4,4\},\{4,3\}\}$
`Out[126] =`
$\{\{0,0\},\{0,1\},\{1,3\},\{3,3\},\{5,0\},\{7,1\},\{8,2\},\{7,3\},\{5,4\},\{4,4\},\{4,3\}\}$

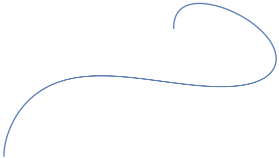
`In[127] :=`
$\mathrm{Bezier}[n\_, pnts\_, x\_] := \mathrm{Sum}[pnts[[k+1]] * \mathrm{BernsteinBasis}[n,k,x], \{k, 0, n\}]$

- We use Mathematica for plotting a Bézier curve.

`In[126] :=` $pnts =$
$\{\{0,0\},\{0,1\},\{1,3\},\{3,3\},\{5,0\},\{7,1\},\{8,2\},\{7,3\},\{5,4\},\{4,4\},\{4,3\}\}$
`Out[126] =`
$\{\{0,0\},\{0,1\},\{1,3\},\{3,3\},\{5,0\},\{7,1\},\{8,2\},\{7,3\},\{5,4\},\{4,4\},\{4,3\}\}$

`In[127] :=`
$\mathrm{Bezier}[n\_, pnts\_, x\_] := \mathrm{Sum}[pnts[[k+1]] * \mathrm{BernsteinBasis}[n,k,x], \{k,0,n\}]$

`In[128] :=` $\mathrm{ParametricPlot}[\mathrm{Bezier}[10, pnts, x], \{x,0,1\}, \mathrm{Axes} \to \mathrm{False}]$

`Out[128] =` 

`In[129] :=` $\mathrm{Export}[\text{"}sample\_bezier.pdf\text{"}, \%, \text{"}PDF\text{"}]$

5 Mathematica for Symbolic Computation

UNIV. SALZBURG
COMPUTERWISSENSCHAFTEN

Symbolic Computation – Caveats

- Consider the class of terms generated from one variable x, constants for the rationals, π, and the function symbols $+, *, \mathsf{sin}, \text{abs}$. Caviness (1967) proved that the simplification problem with respect to functional equivalence is undecidable for this class of terms.

- Consider the class of terms generated from one variable x, constants for the rationals, π, and the function symbols $+, *, \mathsf{sin}$, abs. Caviness (1967) proved that the simplification problem with respect to functional equivalence is undecidable for this class of terms.
- Similarly, Risch proved that the problem of integration in finite terms is undecidable for transcendental functions. In 1968–1969, Risch also described the first complete integration algorithm for algebraic and elementary transcendental functions.

Symbolic Computation – Caveats

- Consider the class of terms generated from one variable x, constants for the rationals, π, and the function symbols $+, *, \mathsf{sin}$, abs. Caviness (1967) proved that the simplification problem with respect to functional equivalence is undecidable for this class of terms.
- Similarly, Risch proved that the problem of integration in finite terms is undecidable for transcendental functions. In 1968–1969, Risch also described the first complete integration algorithm for algebraic and elementary transcendental functions.
- Several important algorithms of computer algebra have an exponential complexity, e.g., Collins' cylindrical algebraic decomposition for quantifier elimination.

- Consider the class of terms generated from one variable x, constants for the rationals, π, and the function symbols $+, *, \mathsf{sin}, \mathsf{abs}$. Caviness (1967) proved that the simplification problem with respect to functional equivalence is undecidable for this class of terms.
- Similarly, Risch proved that the problem of integration in finite terms is undecidable for transcendental functions. In 1968–1969, Risch also described the first complete integration algorithm for algebraic and elementary transcendental functions.
- Several important algorithms of computer algebra have an exponential complexity, e.g., Collins' cylindrical algebraic decomposition for quantifier elimination.
- The bit complexity may grow substantially during a computation, thus potentially requiring a large main memory. In particular, the bit complexity of intermediate results may be significantly larger than the complexity of the input and the output. Some algorithms are well-known to be memory hoggers — consult textbooks prior to waiting for hours/days just in order to see the system crash due to lack of memory.

6 **Graphics and Visualization**

- Basics of Geomview
- Manipulation and Appearance of Geomview Objects
- Geomview I/O
- Geomview and External Applications

UNIV. SALZBURG
COMPUTERWISSENSCHAFTEN

6 **Graphics and Visualization**

- Basics of Geomview
- Manipulation and Appearance of Geomview Objects
- Geomview I/O
- Geomview and External Applications

UNIV. SALZBURG
COMPUTERWISSENSCHAFTEN

Basics of Geomview

- Geomview is an interactive program for *viewing and manipulating 3D geometric objects*.
- Geomview was written by staff members of the Geometry Center (UMN).

Basics of Geomview

- Geomview is an interactive program for *viewing and manipulating 3D geometric objects*.
- Geomview was written by staff members of the Geometry Center (UMN).
- Unfortunately, in an attempt to save money, the US administration scrapped the Geometry Center in 1998, and development efforts for Geomview have been hampered.
- Geomview is in a mature and stable state, though! And it is still used widely and continues to evolve, see www.geomview.org

Basics of Geomview

- Geomview is an interactive program for *viewing and manipulating 3D geometric objects*.
- Geomview was written by staff members of the Geometry Center (UMN).
- Unfortunately, in an attempt to save money, the US administration scrapped the Geometry Center in 1998, and development efforts for Geomview have been hampered.
- Geomview is in a mature and stable state, though! And it is still used widely and continues to evolve, see www.geomview.org
- Geomview is free software, released under a GNU license.
- It runs on a variety of systems using generic OpenGL or X11 graphics and a Motif interface.
- It builds on Mac OS X, and it can also run under MS Windows using Cygwin.

UNIV. SALZBURG
COMPUTERWISSENSCHAFTEN

Basics of Geomview

- The simplest way to use Geomview is as a *standalone viewer* to see and manipulate objects. It can display objects described in a variety of file formats.
- Geomview supports the following simple data types: polyhedra with shared vertices, quadrilaterals, rectangular meshes, vectors, and Bézier surface patches of arbitrary degree including rational patches.
- Object hierarchies can be constructed with lists of objects and instances of object(s) transformed by one or many 4×4 matrices.

Basics of Geomview

- The simplest way to use Geomview is as a *standalone viewer* to see and manipulate objects. It can display objects described in a variety of file formats.
- Geomview supports the following simple data types: polyhedra with shared vertices, quadrilaterals, rectangular meshes, vectors, and Bézier surface patches of arbitrary degree including rational patches.
- Object hierarchies can be constructed with lists of objects and instances of object(s) transformed by one or many 4×4 matrices.
- Objects can be manipulated through direct mouse manipulation, control panels, and keyboard shortcuts.
- Geomview allows multiple independently controllable objects and cameras. It provides interactive control for motion, appearances (including lighting, shading, and materials), picking on an object, edge or vertex level, snapshots, and adding or deleting objects.

Basics of Geomview

- The simplest way to use Geomview is as a *standalone viewer* to see and manipulate objects. It can display objects described in a variety of file formats.
- Geomview supports the following simple data types: polyhedra with shared vertices, quadrilaterals, rectangular meshes, vectors, and Bézier surface patches of arbitrary degree including rational patches.
- Object hierarchies can be constructed with lists of objects and instances of object(s) transformed by one or many 4×4 matrices.
- Objects can be manipulated through direct mouse manipulation, control panels, and keyboard shortcuts.
- Geomview allows multiple independently controllable objects and cameras. It provides interactive control for motion, appearances (including lighting, shading, and materials), picking on an object, edge or vertex level, snapshots, and adding or deleting objects.
- One can also use Geomview to handle the display of data coming from another program (*external module*) that is running simultaneously. As the other program changes the data, the Geomview image reflects the changes.
- Geomview can also display 3D graphics output from Mathematica and Maple.

UNIV. SALZBURG
COMPUTERWISSENSCHAFTEN

6 Graphics and Visualization

- Basics of Geomview
- Manipulation and Appearance of Geomview Objects
- Geomview I/O
- Geomview and External Applications

UNIV. SALZBURG
COMPUTERWISSENSCHAFTEN

Object Manipulations

- Objects can be selected by clicking at the name of the object in the `Targets` browser of the `Main` panel. If `world` is selected, then any motion/transformation is applied to all objects currently drawn.
- The object selected is called the *target object*.
- Geomview lets you manipulate objects with the mouse. There are six different mouse motion modes: Rotate, Translate, Cam Fly, Cam Zoom, Geom Scale, and Cam Orbit. The `Tools` panel has a button for each of these modes; to switch modes, click on the corresponding button.

Object Manipulations

- Objects can be selected by clicking at the name of the object in the `Targets` browser of the `Main` panel. If `world` is selected, then any motion/transformation is applied to all objects currently drawn.
- The object selected is called the *target object*.
- Geomview lets you manipulate objects with the mouse. There are six different mouse motion modes: Rotate, Translate, Cam Fly, Cam Zoom, Geom Scale, and Cam Orbit. The `Tools` panel has a button for each of these modes; to switch modes, click on the corresponding button.
- Most of the motion modes have *inertia*, which means that if one lets go of the button while moving the mouse, the motion will continue.
- Pressing the shift key while dragging with left or middle mouse buttons in most motion modes gives slow-speed motions, useful for fine control of object placements.

Object Manipulations

- Objects can be selected by clicking at the name of the object in the `Targets` browser of the `Main` panel. If `world` is selected, then any motion/transformation is applied to all objects currently drawn.
- The object selected is called the *target object*.
- Geomview lets you manipulate objects with the mouse. There are six different mouse motion modes: Rotate, Translate, Cam Fly, Cam Zoom, Geom Scale, and Cam Orbit. The `Tools` panel has a button for each of these modes; to switch modes, click on the corresponding button.
- Most of the motion modes have *inertia*, which means that if one lets go of the button while moving the mouse, the motion will continue.
- Pressing the shift key while dragging with left or middle mouse buttons in most motion modes gives slow-speed motions, useful for fine control of object placements.
- Generally, the left mouse button controls motion in the screen plane, while the middle mouse controls motion along or around the forward direction.

- Objects can be selected by clicking at the name of the object in the `Targets` browser of the `Main` panel. If `world` is selected, then any motion/transformation is applied to all objects currently drawn.
- The object selected is called the *target object*.
- Geomview lets you manipulate objects with the mouse. There are six different mouse motion modes: Rotate, Translate, Cam Fly, Cam Zoom, Geom Scale, and Cam Orbit. The `Tools` panel has a button for each of these modes; to switch modes, click on the corresponding button.
- Most of the motion modes have *inertia*, which means that if one lets go of the button while moving the mouse, the motion will continue.
- Pressing the shift key while dragging with left or middle mouse buttons in most motion modes gives slow-speed motions, useful for fine control of object placements.
- Generally, the left mouse button controls motion in the screen plane, while the middle mouse controls motion along or around the forward direction.
- The `Center` button undoes the target object's transformation, moving it back to its home position, which is where it was when it was originally loaded into Geomview.

Object Manipulations

- Geomview uses the *glass sphere model* for mouse-based rotations. Think of the object as being inside an invisible sphere, and regard the mouse cursor as a gripper outside the sphere. When one presses the left mouse button, the gripper grabs the sphere; when one releases the left mouse button, the gripper releases the sphere.
- Moving the mouse while holding the button down causes the sphere (and hence the object) to move in the same direction as the mouse.

Object Manipulations

- Geomview uses the *glass sphere model* for mouse-based rotations. Think of the object as being inside an invisible sphere, and regard the mouse cursor as a gripper outside the sphere. When one presses the left mouse button, the gripper grabs the sphere; when one releases the left mouse button, the gripper releases the sphere.
- Moving the mouse while holding the button down causes the sphere (and hence the object) to move in the same direction as the mouse.
- Specifically, in `Rotate` mode the axis of rotation passes through the origin of the center object, is parallel to the camera view plane, and is perpendicular to the direction of motion of the mouse. When the center is "target", this means that the target object rotates about its own origin.

Object Manipulations

- Geomview uses the *glass sphere model* for mouse-based rotations. Think of the object as being inside an invisible sphere, and regard the mouse cursor as a gripper outside the sphere. When one presses the left mouse button, the gripper grabs the sphere; when one releases the left mouse button, the gripper releases the sphere.
- Moving the mouse while holding the button down causes the sphere (and hence the object) to move in the same direction as the mouse.
- Specifically, in `Rotate` mode the axis of rotation passes through the origin of the center object, is parallel to the camera view plane, and is perpendicular to the direction of motion of the mouse. When the center is "target", this means that the target object rotates about its own origin.
- Press the middle mouse button in order to rotate the target object about an axis perpendicular to the view plane.
- One can pick any point on an object (not just its origin) as the center of motion by holding down the shift key while

UNIV. SALZBURG
COMPUTERWISSENSCHAFTEN

Object Manipulations

- Geomview uses the *glass sphere model* for mouse-based rotations. Think of the object as being inside an invisible sphere, and regard the mouse cursor as a gripper outside the sphere. When one presses the left mouse button, the gripper grabs the sphere; when one releases the left mouse button, the gripper releases the sphere.
- Moving the mouse while holding the button down causes the sphere (and hence the object) to move in the same direction as the mouse.
- Specifically, in `Rotate` mode the axis of rotation passes through the origin of the center object, is parallel to the camera view plane, and is perpendicular to the direction of motion of the mouse. When the center is "target", this means that the target object rotates about its own origin.
- Press the middle mouse button in order to rotate the target object about an axis perpendicular to the view plane.
- One can pick any point on an object (not just its origin) as the center of motion by holding down the shift key while clicking the right mouse button; this chooses a point of interest.
- In order to translate the target object, hold the left mouse button down (after selecting the `Translate` mode). The middle mouse button translates the target along an axis perpendicular to the view plane.

UNIV. SALZBURG
COMPUTERWISSENSCHAFTEN

Object Manipulations

- Geomview uses the *glass sphere model* for mouse-based rotations. Think of the object as being inside an invisible sphere, and regard the mouse cursor as a gripper outside the sphere. When one presses the left mouse button, the gripper grabs the sphere; when one releases the left mouse button, the gripper releases the sphere.
- Moving the mouse while holding the button down causes the sphere (and hence the object) to move in the same direction as the mouse.
- Specifically, in `Rotate` mode the axis of rotation passes through the origin of the center object, is parallel to the camera view plane, and is perpendicular to the direction of motion of the mouse. When the center is "target", this means that the target object rotates about its own origin.
- Press the middle mouse button in order to rotate the target object about an axis perpendicular to the view plane.
- One can pick any point on an object (not just its origin) as the center of motion by holding down the shift key while clicking the right mouse button; this chooses a point of interest.
- In order to translate the target object, hold the left mouse button down (after selecting the `Translate` mode). The middle mouse button translates the target along an axis perpendicular to the view plane.
- `Cam Fly` is a crude flight simulator that lets one fly around the scene. It works by moving the camera.

Object Manipulations

- `Cam Orbit` mode lets one rotate the current camera around the current center.
- `Cam Zoom` lets one change the current camera's field of view with the mouse.
- `Geom Scale` mode lets one enlarge or shrink an object.
- The `Stop` button causes all motion to stop.
- The `Look At` button causes the current camera to be moved to a position such that it is looking at the target object, and such that the target object more or less fills the window.
- The `Reset` button stops all motion and causes all objects to move back to their home positions.

UNIV. SALZBURG
COMPUTERWISSENSCHAFTEN

Modifying the Appearance of Objects

- Geomview uses a hierarchy of appearances to control the way things look. An *appearance* is a specification of information about how something should be drawn.
- There is an appearance associated with "World", which serves as the parent of each individual object's appearance. Also, there is a global "base" appearance, which is the parent of the World appearance.

Modifying the Appearance of Objects

- Geomview uses a hierarchy of appearances to control the way things look. An *appearance* is a specification of information about how something should be drawn.
- There is an appearance associated with "World", which serves as the parent of each individual object's appearance. Also, there is a global "base" appearance, which is the parent of the World appearance.
- Appearances work in a hierarchical manner: if a certain appearance property, for example a face color, is not specified in a particular object's appearance, that object is drawn using that property from the parent appearance. If both the parent and the child appearance specify a property, the child's setting takes precedence unless the parent appearance is set to override.

Modifying the Appearance of Objects

- The `Appearance` panel controls various things about the way Geomview draws objects. For instance, the `[ae] Edges` button allows to toggle between having the object displayed with or without edges.
- The `Appearance` panel also lets one select colors (in RGB or HSV) and shading information (constant, flat, smooth).

UNIV. SALZBURG
COMPUTERWISSENSCHAFTEN

- The `Appearance` panel controls various things about the way Geomview draws objects. For instance, the `[ae] Edges` button allows to toggle between having the object displayed with or without edges.
- The `Appearance` panel also lets one select colors (in RGB or HSV) and shading information (constant, flat, smooth).
- The `Materials` panel controls material properties such as the degree of opacity, diffuse and specular reflection, and ambient light.

Modifying the Appearance of Objects

- The `Appearance` panel controls various things about the way Geomview draws objects. For instance, the `[ae] Edges` button allows to toggle between having the object displayed with or without edges.
- The `Appearance` panel also lets one select colors (in RGB or HSV) and shading information (constant, flat, smooth).
- The `Materials` panel controls material properties such as the degree of opacity, diffuse and specular reflection, and ambient light.
- The `Lighting` panel controls the number, position, and color of the light sources used in shading.

Modifying the Appearance of Objects

- The `Appearance` panel controls various things about the way Geomview draws objects. For instance, the `[ae] Edges` button allows to toggle between having the object displayed with or without edges.
- The `Appearance` panel also lets one select colors (in RGB or HSV) and shading information (constant, flat, smooth).
- The `Materials` panel controls material properties such as the degree of opacity, diffuse and specular reflection, and ambient light.
- The `Lighting` panel controls the number, position, and color of the light sources used in shading.
- The `Cameras` panel controls certain aspects of the target camera (such as its field of view). The use of multiple cameras is supported.

Modifying the Appearance of Objects

- The `Appearance` panel controls various things about the way Geomview draws objects. For instance, the `[ae] Edges` button allows to toggle between having the object displayed with or without edges.
- The `Appearance` panel also lets one select colors (in RGB or HSV) and shading information (constant, flat, smooth).
- The `Materials` panel controls material properties such as the degree of opacity, diffuse and specular reflection, and ambient light.
- The `Lighting` panel controls the number, position, and color of the light sources used in shading.
- The `Cameras` panel controls certain aspects of the target camera (such as its field of view). The use of multiple cameras is supported.
- The *Geomview command language* (gcl) provides complete control of all appearance data, including data that cannot be changed via the panels.

6 Graphics and Visualization

I/O Control

- The `Save` panel offers several possibilities for storing Geomview objects and other information in files.
- One can store gcl commands, geometric data, input data for RenderMan, PPM (software) snapshots, snapshots in PostScript format, and data for restoring all windows and panels in a subsequent session of Geomview.
- Commands in gcl format, which uses the syntax of lisp, can be entered via the `Commands` panel.

I/O Control

- The `Save` panel offers several possibilities for storing Geomview objects and other information in files.
- One can store gcl commands, geometric data, input data for RenderMan, PPM (software) snapshots, snapshots in PostScript format, and data for restoring all windows and panels in a subsequent session of Geomview.
- Commands in gcl format, which uses the syntax of lisp, can be entered via the `Commands` panel.
- Most panel interaction can be replaced by commands that have keyboard shortcuts. For instance, the keyboard shortcut for switching to `Rotate` mode is `r`.
- Some keyboard shortcuts consist of more than one key. In these cases one types the keys one after the other, with no `RET` afterwards. For instance, `g1ae` toggles the edge drawing for object ("geom") `g1`.

OOGL Files

- Geomview reads objects in the format of the *Object Oriented Graphics Library* (OOGL).
- Examples for many OOGL objects can be found in Geomview's `data/geom` directory.
- Most OOGL files are are free-format ASCII. (Binary formats are also defined for several objects types.)
- Typical OOGL objects begin with a key word designating the object type, possibly with modifiers indicating the presence of additional data (such as color).
- Most key words are case sensitive.
- When OOGL objects are input, the OOGL library uses the file suffix to guess at the file type.

OOGL Files

- Geomview supports inhomogeneous and homogeneous coordinates.
- Transformation matrices are given in a 4×4 row-vector representation, for multiplication on the right of vectors. That is, a row vector p (of a point in homogeneous coordinates) is transformed by a matrix $\mathbf{M}$ to a point p' as follows: $p' = p\,\mathbf{M}$.
- Appearances and texture maps can be specified; see the manual for details.

UNIV. SALZBURG
COMPUTERWISSENSCHAFTEN

OOGL Objects

QUAD: a collection of quadrilaterals. The default file suffix is `.quad`.

MESH: a rectangularly-connected mesh of dimension $n \times m$. The default file suffix is `.mesh`.

Bézier: a Bézier surface. The default file suffix is `.bez`.

OFF: an object in *object file format*. It is used for representing collections of planar polygons, possibly with shared vertices. This is a convenient way to describe polyhedra. The polygons may be concave but polygons with holes are not supported. The default file suffix is `.off`.

VECT: strings of connected line segments, possibly closed. The default file suffix is `.vect`.

SKEL: collections of points and polylines, possibly with shared vertices. The default file suffix is `.skel`.

SPHERE: a sphere, drawn as a collection of rational Bézier patches. The default file suffix is `.sph`.

INST: a 4×4 transformation, to be applied to another OOGL object. The default file suffix is `.inst`.

LIST: a list of OOGL objects. The default file suffix is `.list`.

TLIST: a list of 4×4 transformations. The default file suffix is `.grp`.

External Modules

- An *external module* is a program that interacts with Geomview. It communicates with Geomview through gcl commands and can control any aspect of Geomview that one can control through Geomview's user interface. Typically, Geomview acts as a *display engine* for the external module.

External Modules

- An *external module* is a program that interacts with Geomview. It communicates with Geomview through gcl commands and can control any aspect of Geomview that one can control through Geomview's user interface. Typically, Geomview acts as a *display engine* for the external module.
- External modules known to Geomview are listed in the `Modules` browser in Geomview's `Main` panel. An external module can be invoked by clicking on its entry in the browser.
- In order to make an external module `foo` known to Geomview, include the following line in your local initialization file, `.geomview`:

  ```
  (emodule-define "Foo" "./foo")
  ```

  Here, `Foo` is the name of the external module that will appear in the `Modules` browser of Geomview. One can also execute this command on-line from the `Commands` panel.

UNIV. SALZBURG
COMPUTERWISSENSCHAFTEN

External Modules

- When starting an external module, Geomview creates *pipes* connected to the module's standard input and output.
- Geomview interprets everything that the module writes to its standard output as a gcl command. Likewise, if the exernal module requests any data from Geomview, Geomview writes that data to the module's standard input.

UNIV. SALZBURG
COMPUTERWISSENSCHAFTEN

External Modules

- When starting an external module, Geomview creates *pipes* connected to the module's standard input and output.
- Geomview interprets everything that the module writes to its standard output as a gcl command. Likewise, if the exernal module requests any data from Geomview, Geomview writes that data to the module's standard input.
- Note that this implies that the module cannot use standard I/O for communicating with the user!
- Sample external modules (`example*.c`) are available in Geomview's subdirectory `/geomview/doc`.

Using Geomview as an External Display Engine

- It is also possible to invoke Geomview from an application program, and to direct graphics output produced by the application to Geomview, thus using Geomview as an external display engine.
- Communication between the application program and Geomview is again carried out via *pipes*.

Using Geomview as an External Display Engine

- It is also possible to invoke Geomview from an application program, and to direct graphics output produced by the application to Geomview, thus using Geomview as an external display engine.
- Communication between the application program and Geomview is again carried out via *pipes*.
- In a C environment, an input file `geomview_in` for Geomview is opened by the application program as follows:

```
geomview_in = popen("togeomview", "w");
```

- Then, the application writes any input for Geomview to `geomview_in`.
- Since pipes may be buffered, it is advisable to flush the pipe after data has been written to the pipe: `fflush(geomview_in)`.

Using Geomview as an External Display Engine

- Typically, we will want Geomview to create objects that can later on be modified (e.g., translated or rotated). The gcl command

  ```
  (geometry Foo { : foo })
  ```

  instructs Geomview to create an object ("geom") named `Foo` as an instance of the *handle* `foo`, where `Foo` is the name of the object as it will appear in the object browser of Geomview, and `foo` is the internal reference for Geomview.
- Handles allow one to name a piece of geometry whose value can be specified elsewhere, and which can be updated repeatedly. See the manual for details.

Using Geomview as an External Display Engine

- Typically, we will want Geomview to create objects that can later on be modified (e.g., translated or rotated). The gcl command

  ```
  (geometry Foo { : foo })
  ```

  instructs Geomview to create an object ("geom") named `Foo` as an instance of the *handle* `foo`, where `Foo` is the name of the object as it will appear in the object browser of Geomview, and `foo` is the internal reference for Geomview.
- Handles allow one to name a piece of geometry whose value can be specified elsewhere, and which can be updated repeatedly. See the manual for details.
- If multiple objects are to be passed to Geomview, it is a good idea to turn off any scaling of the individual objects:

  ```
  (normalization Foo none)
  ```

The End!

I hope that you enjoyed this course, and I wish you all the best for your future studies.

UNIVERSITÄT SALZBURG
Computational Geometry and Applications Lab